

Whosoever takes the book of Knowledge
shall not be ashamed before his
College -

H. U. S.

Are we wiser?

Book of Knowledge
J. L.

Dr. Oswald

1911
1912
1913
1914

Ruth, Fred,
~~and~~ ~~and~~ ~~and~~
has your
1913

H. G. S.
417 Clinton St.
Brooklyn
N. Y.



Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.25.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University. \$1.25.

Six Orations. \$1.00.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University. 80 cents.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.00.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.25.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare. Moore. **Satires and Epistles,** Morris. In one volume. \$2.00.

Pliny's Letters. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California. \$2.25.

Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.

Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius \$1.80

Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus. \$1.80

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans.

James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. \$1.25.

Others to be announced later.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD

HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK

REVISED



NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. 20

PREFACE

THIS book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallic War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are stories for rapid reading, based on the vocabulary and constructions already studied, and selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, in simplified form. This material should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified; a different arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method or scope of the work.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

June, 1911.

H. C. P.

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	II
1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns	16
2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	20
4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Mas- culine of Adjectives	25
6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. In- direct Object	28
7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . Agreement	30
8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	33
9. Second Declension (continued). Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Ad- jectives in <i>-er, -(e)ra, -(e)rum</i>	36
10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review	40
11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i>	60
18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON	PAGE
21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Ablative of Specification	78
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>iō</i>	89
29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31. <i>Is, Idem</i>	95
32. The Relative Pronoun	98
33. <i>Hic and Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34. <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i>	107
36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37. Fourth Declension	111
38. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession	114
39. Irregular Verb <i>Eō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither	116
40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possum</i>	131
46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

LESSON	PAGE
53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII	154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings	155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements	157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Ūtor</i> , <i>Fruor</i> , etc.	161
57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . Dative with Intransitives	163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII	165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose	166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense? Result Clauses	169
61. <i>Volō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> , <i>Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose	172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses	174
63. Substantive Clauses	178
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX	181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive	182
66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs	185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations	187
68. Gerund and Gerundive	190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms	193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X	194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time	196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time	198
73. Wishes	200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences	202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose	204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations	206

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING	209
--	-----

SELECTIONS FOR READING :

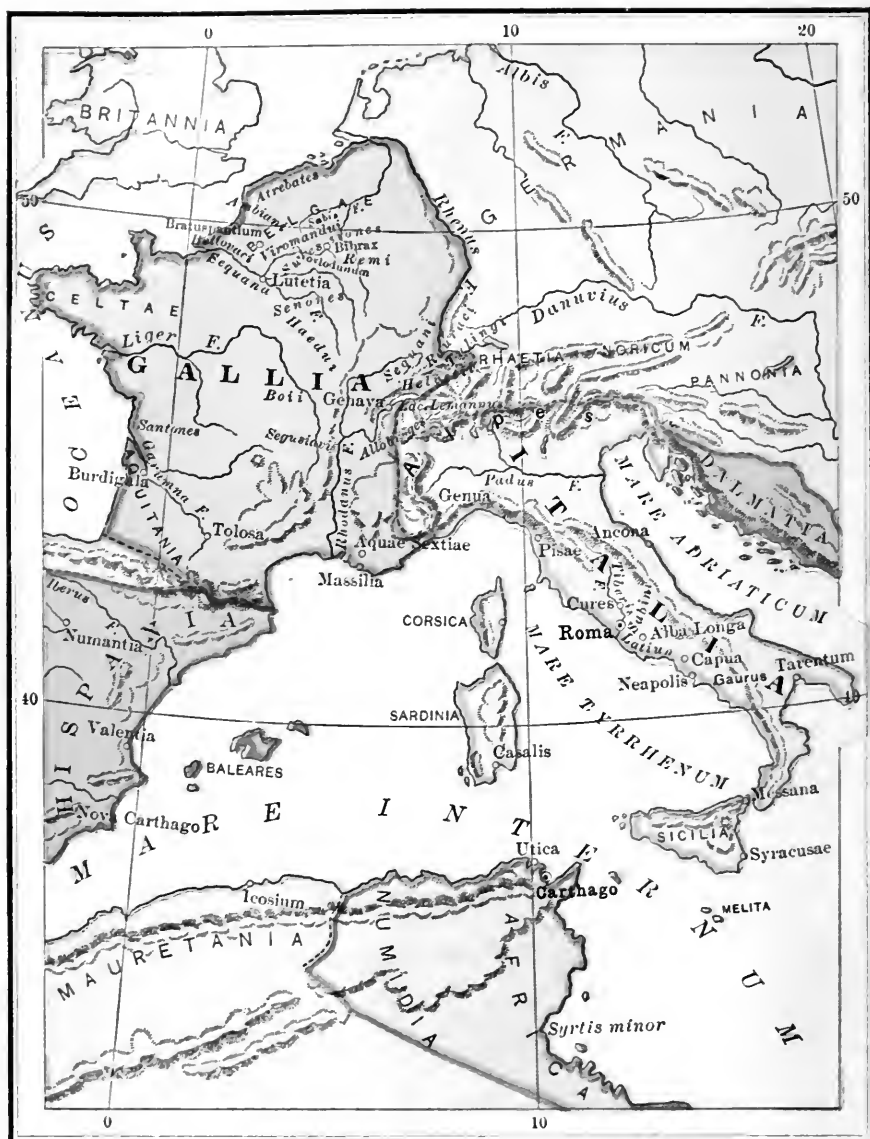
Selections from Roman History	227
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1-20	236

APPENDIX. Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax	248
--	-----

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	289
------------------------------------	-----

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	321
------------------------------------	-----

INDEX	337
-----------------	-----



(10)

ITALY AND GAUL

SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in *iūnior*.

3. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one sound. They are

ae *oe* *au* *eu* *ui*

PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows :

<i>ā</i> like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .	<i>ī</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
<i>ē</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> .	<i>ō</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i> .
<i>ū</i> like <i>oo</i> in <i>root</i> .	

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows :

<i>a</i> like the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahá</i> .	<i>i</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>pit</i> .
<i>e</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>step</i> .	<i>o</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>or</i> .
<i>u</i> like <i>u</i> in <i>pull</i> .	

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

- | | |
|--|---|
| c and g are always hard, as in <i>come</i> and <i>go</i> . | s is a hissing sound, as in <i>sin</i> ; never like <i>z</i> as in <i>ease</i> . |
| i consonant is like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> . | ch is like <i>ch</i> in <i>chorus</i> . |
| t is always hard, as in <i>tin</i> . | ph is like <i>ph</i> in <i>alphabet</i> . |
| v is like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> . | qu is almost like <i>kw</i> . |

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

- | | |
|--|---|
| ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> . | au like <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> . |
| oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i> . | eu (rare) like <i>éh-oo</i> . |
| ui is almost like <i>we</i> . | ei (rare) like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> . |

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

hī	iam	tot	mē	genus	-que	cui
ad	vīs	sīc	quia	coepit	vir	aeger
ita	quis	haec	causa	rēgnō	mēnsae	

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: **ae-dī-fi-cō**, *I build*.

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: **a-mī-cus**, *friend*, **dī-xit**, *he said*.

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that **l** or **r** with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: **hōs-pes**, *guest*, **dīc-tus**, *said*, **sānc-tus**, *holy*, **cās-tra**, *camp*, **dē-mōns-trō**, *I point out*, **cōg-nōs-cō**, *I recognize*, **púb-li-cus**, *public*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ád-est** (*ad*, *near*; *est*, *he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-él-la**, *girl*.

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (—) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**: **có-pi-a**, *abundance*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long: **có-gō** (**cōāgō**), *I collect*.
3. Vowels are long before **nf**, **ns**, **nct**, **ncs**: **in-ferō**, *I bring in*; **in-sānus**, *mad*.
4. Diphthongs are long: **cā-ūsa**, *cause*.

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature: **lē-gēs**, *laws*; **ae-dēs**, *temple*.

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x** or **z**, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short: **vo-cant**, *they call*; **dux**, *leader*.

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult: **té-mp-lum**, *temple*.

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: *amāre*, to love; *mittere*, to send.
4. Certain words like *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, and, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: *amātne*, does he love? *hominésque*, and the men.

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

inīquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiaē	filius	coepērunt	cuius
huic	īdem	filiusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative*. This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.¹
6. *Ablative*. This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. Stem and Base. — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that *o* of *-o*-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. Conjugation. — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

¹ Except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

GENDER

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: **nauta**, *sailor*; **Tiberis**, *the Tiber*; **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **aquilō**, *north wind*; **Iānuārius**, *January*.
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: **filia**, *daughter*; **Ītalia**, *Italy*; **Athēnae**, *Athens*; **pirus**, *pear tree*.
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: **nihil**, *nothing*.

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

FEMININE AND MASCULINE NOUNS

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem¹ **stellā**. Base¹ **stell-**.

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stella , <i>a star</i> (as subject) ²	-a
GEN.	stellae , <i>of a star</i> , or <i>star's</i>	-ae
DAT.	stellae , <i>to</i> or <i>for a star</i>	-ae
ACC.	stellam , <i>star</i> , or <i>a star</i> (as object)	-am
ABL.	stellā , <i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>by a star</i>	-ā

¹ See 25. ² There is no article in Latin. Consequently **stella** may mean *star*, *the star*, or *a star*.

	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>stellae, stars (as subject)</i>	-ae
GEN.	<i>stellārum, of stars, or stars'</i>	-ārum
DAT.	<i>stellis, to or for stars</i>	-is
ACC.	<i>stellās, stars (as object)</i>	-ās
ABL.	<i>stellis, from, with, by stars</i>	-is

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
3. That the -a of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like *stella*:

NOUNS

<i>puella, ae, f., girl.</i>	<i>rosa, ae, f., rose.</i>
<i>rēgina, ae, f., queen.</i>	<i>via, ae, f., road, way, street.</i>
<i>stella, ae, f., star.</i>	<i>silva, ae, f., forest.</i>
<i>porta, ae, f., gate.</i>	<i>lūna, ae, f., moon.</i>

31.

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

- I. 1. *Puellārum.* 2. *Portīs.* 3. *Viā.* 4. *Rosīs.*
 5. *Silvam.* 6. *Stellis.* 7. *Rēginae.* 8. *Viīs.* 9. *Portae.*
 10. *Stellās.* 11. *Viārum.* 12. *Rosa rēginae.* 13. *Viās silvārum.*

- II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
 4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of the stars.
 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, *pretty rose*

Stem **rosā- pulchrā-**

Base **ros- pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	rosa pulchra , <i>a pretty rose</i>
GEN.	rosae pulchrae , <i>of a pretty rose</i>
DAT.	rosae pulchrae , <i>to or for a pretty rose</i>
ACC.	rosam pulchram , <i>a pretty rose</i>
ABL.	rosā pulchrā , <i>from, with, by a pretty rose</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	rosae pulchrae , <i>pretty roses</i>
GEN.	rosārum pulchrārum , <i>of pretty roses</i>
DAT.	rosīs pulchrīs , <i>to or for pretty roses</i>
ACC.	rosās pulchrās , <i>pretty roses</i>
ABL.	rosīs pulchrīs , <i>from, with, by pretty roses</i>

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together : *via lāta, the wide road ; puella parva, the little girl.*

33. Examine the following :

1. *Rosa pulchra est, the rose is pretty.*
2. *Rosae pulchrae sunt, the roses are pretty.*

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects *rosa* and *rosae* are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives *pulchra* and *pulchrae* agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*
2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case.*

35. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fābula, ae, f., story.
sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
insula, ae, f., island.
terra, ae, f., land, country.

ADJECTIVES

bona, good.
lāta, broad, wide.
longa, long.
magna, large, great.
pulchra, beautiful, pretty.

VERBS

est, (he, she, it) is, there is.
sunt, (they) are, there are.

ADVERBS

ubi, where, when.
nōn, not.

CONJUNCTION

et, and.

36.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābulae longae sunt. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra.
 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt īnsulae. 8. Lātīs terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae? 12. Sagittārum longārum.

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following :

1. **Rosa puellae alba est**, *the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
2. **Rosae puellārum albae sunt**, *the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa** : not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE. — **The Genitive.** — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	sum , <i>I am</i>	sumus , <i>we are</i>
2D PER.	es , <i>you are (thou art)</i>	estis , <i>you are</i>
3D PER.	est , <i>(he, she, it) is, there is</i>	sunt , <i>they are, there are</i>

¹ It is, est.

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, *the woman is beautiful.*

QUESTIONS

1. **Estne** fēmina pulchra? *is the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. **Nōnne** fēmina pulchra est? *is not the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. **Ubi** est fēmina? *where is the woman?*

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by **nōnne**.
3. That **-ne** is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (**quī**, *who*, **ubi**, *where*, **cūr**, *why*, etc.).

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
vīta, ae, f., *life*.
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance* (pl., *troops, forces*).
fēmina, ae, f., *woman*.
patria, ae, f., *native land, country*.
Graecia, ae, f., *Greece*.
Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe*.
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*.
filia,¹ ae, f., *daughter*.

ADJECTIVES

nova, *new*.
parva, *small*.
mea, *my, mine*.
tua, *your, yours* (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, *always, ever*.

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

¹ **Fīlia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, have the ending **-ābus**, not **-īs**, in the dative and ablative plural: **filiābus**, **deābus**.

42.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōne sunt parvae filiae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vita fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiae rēginae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgina tuae patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiae patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēginārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēginārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

(READING SELECTION 441)

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

SINGULAR		PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹
1ST PER.	<i>amō, I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō (or -m), <i>I</i>
2D PER.	<i>amās, you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s , <i>you (or thou)</i>
3D PER.	<i>amat, he loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t , <i>he, she, it</i>
PLURAL		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER.	<i>amāmus, we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus , <i>we</i>
2D PER.	<i>amātis, you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis , <i>you</i>
3D PER.	<i>amant, they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt , <i>they</i>

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and is shortened before **-t, -nt**.
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.

44. Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*

culpō, *I blame*

vocō, *I call*

laudō, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following:

1. **Rēgīna nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēgīnae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Agreement of Verb.**—*A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*
2. **Direct Object.**—*The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m.,¹ *farmer*.nauta, ae, m.,¹ *sailor*.Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy*.Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.inopia, ae, f., *lack, want*.fida, *faithful*.superba, *proud, haughty*.amō, *I love, I like*.pugnō, *I fight*.vocō, *I call*.culpō, *I blame*.laudō, *I praise*.cūr, adv., *why?*in, prep. with abl., *in, on*.²

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae insulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā.
3. Suntne cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminae filiae
nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pul-
chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vo-
cantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In
Ītaliā inopia est pecūniae. 5. Laudantne nautās?
6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēgināe nautās
nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae.
9. Ubi sunt agricolārum filiae? 10. Cūr nautam cul-
pat? 11. Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā.
12. Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1.

² In is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. **Sunt in Eurōpā**, *they are in Europe*. **Pugnant in silvīs**, *they are fighting in the forest*.

2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹ are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor? 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE
NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. dominus, m., *master, lord*

Stem domino-²

Base domin-

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	dominus, <i>master</i>	-us
GEN.	dominī, <i>of the master</i>	-ī
DAT.	dominō, <i>to or for the master</i>	-ō
ACC.	dominum, <i>master</i>	-um
VOC. ³	domine, (<i>O</i>) <i>master</i>	-e
ABL.	dominō, <i>from, with, by the master</i>	-ō
	PLURAL	
NOM.	dominī, <i>masters</i>	-ī
GEN.	dominōrum, <i>of the masters</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	dominīs, <i>to or for the masters</i>	-īs
ACC.	dominōs, <i>masters</i>	-ōs
VOC.	dominī, (<i>O</i>) <i>masters</i>	-ī
ABL.	dominīs, <i>from, with, by the masters</i>	-īs

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in -us is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in -us.

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

² See 25.

³ See 24, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, good master

SINGULAR

NOM. dominus bonus	<i>good master</i>
GEN. dominī bonī	<i>of the good master</i>
DAT. dominō bonō	<i>to or for the good master</i>
ACC. dominum bonum	<i>good master</i>
VOC. domine bone	<i>(O) good master</i>
ABL. dominō bonō	<i>from, with, by the good master</i>

PLURAL

NOM. dominī bonī	<i>good masters</i>
GEN. dominōrum bonōrum	<i>of the good masters</i>
DAT. dominīs bonīs	<i>to or for the good masters</i>
ACC. dominōs bonōs	<i>good masters</i>
VOC. dominī bonī	<i>(O) good masters</i>
ABL. dominīs bonīs	<i>from, with, by the good masters</i>

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the -ī of the genitive singular: genitive, **dominī**, base **domin-**.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

amicus, ī, m., <i>friend.</i>	bonus, <i>good.</i>
cibus, ī, m., <i>food.</i>	malus, <i>bad, evil.</i>
dominus, ī, m., <i>master, lord.</i>	parvus, <i>small.</i>
equus, ī, m., <i>horse.</i>	superbus, <i>proud, haughty.</i>
hortus, ī, m., <i>garden.</i>	fidus, <i>faithful.</i>
servus, ī, m., <i>slave.</i>	dēlectō, <i>I delight, I please.</i>
sed, conj., <i>but.</i>	servō, <i>I keep, I preserve, I</i>
magnus, <i>great, large.</i>	<i>save.</i>

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
3. Ubi nautae pignant? 4. Nautae in viā pignant.
5. Fīliam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper
laudant.

- II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is
the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; domīnī
superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum
laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae
filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibus dominō servant.
9. Culpāsne, amīce,¹ dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae
parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr
fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

- II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is
in the garden. 4. He blames his ² faithful horse. 5. The
garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases
the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

² Omit. The possessives in Latin are frequently omitted, when they are
not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN -um.
 APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. *dōnum, gift**dōnum grātum, acceptable gift*Stem *dōno-*Base *dōn-*Stem *dōno- grāto-*Base *dōn- grāt-*

SINGULAR

NOM. *dōnum, gift*
 GEN. *dōnī, of the gift*
 DAT. *dōnō, to or for the gift*
 ACC. *dōnum, gift* [*gift*]
 ABL. *dōnō, from, with, by the*

SINGULAR

NOM. *dōnum grātum*
 GEN. *dōnī grātī*
 DAT. *dōnō grātō*
 ACC. *dōnum grātum*
 ABL. *dōnō grātō*

PLURAL

NOM. *dōna, gifts*
 GEN. *dōnōrum, of the gifts*
 DAT. *dōnīs, to or for the gifts*
 ACC. *dōna, gifts* [*gifts*]
 ABL. *dōnīs, from, with, by the*

PLURAL

NOM. *dōna grāta*
 GEN. *dōnōrum grātōrum*
 DAT. *dōnīs grātīs*
 ACC. *dōna grāta*
 ABL. *dōnīs grātīs*

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in -a. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. *Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat, Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. *Mārcō amīcō cibum dō, I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, *c*, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*

2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum, i, n., *war*.

dōnum, i, n., *gift*.

oppidum, i, n., *town*.

frūmentum, i, n., *grain*.

vīnum, i, n., *wine*.

in, prep. with acc.,¹ *into, to, against*; with abl., *in, on, over*.

Mārcus, i, m., *Marcus*.

incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

Rōmānus, i, m., *Roman*.

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing* (followed by dat.).

dō, *I give*.

portō, *I carry*.

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Malum servum culpāmus.** 2. **Laudantne dominī superbī servōs fidōs?** 3. **Equī dominī sunt in magnō hortō.**

¹ See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with **in** when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). **Vīnum in oppidum portat**, *he is carrying wine into the town*.

4. Ubi servi cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolaē fīdōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in dominī hortō. 7. Fēmina amīcī filiam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vinō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fīdus. 3. Incolīs vinum damus. 4. Bellum Rōmānīs grātum est. 5. Cibus in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārum amīcus, Rōmānus est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Filiae rēginae in hortō sunt. 9. Vinum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vinum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum et vinum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

(READING SELECTION 442)

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
VOC.	bonī	bonae	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Decline together **amīcus fidus**, *faithful friend*; **puella parva**, *little girl*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. **Amīcus est fidus**, *the friend is faithful*.
2. **Agricolae sunt validī**, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. **Puellae sunt parvae**, *the girls are small*.
4. **Nautās superbōs nōn amāmus**, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

- a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.
- b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus, the good sailor; pōculum magnum, the large cup; agricola validus, the strong farmer.*

65. RULE. — Agreement of Adjectives. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

malus, a, um, <i>bad, evil, wicked.</i>	lātus, a, um, <i>wide, broad.</i>
magnus, a, um, <i>great, large.</i>	novus, a, um, <i>new.</i>
parvus, a, um, <i>small.</i>	fīdus, a, um, <i>faithful, loyal.</i>
meus, a, um, <i>my, mine.</i>	superbus, a, um, <i>proud,</i>
tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours.</i>	<i>haughty.</i>
grātus, a, um, <i>acceptable,</i>	validus, a, um, <i>strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>pleasing.</i>	convocō, <i>I call together, I</i>
albus, a, um, <i>white.</i>	<i>summon.</i>
cārus, a, um, <i>dear.</i>	hodiē, adv., <i>to-day.</i>
peritus, a, um, <i>skillful.</i>	nunc, adv., <i>now.</i>
longus, a, um, <i>long.</i>	

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Filiae equīs cibum dant. 2. Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta. 3. Vocātisne incolās Galliae? 4. Ubi Rōmānī pugnant? 5. Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant. 6. Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant. 2. Ubi est hodiē nauta peritus? 3. In oppidō nunc est nauta. 4. Dōna meis amicīs sunt semper grāta. 5. Equum

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodīe perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmus. 10. Dōna rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN
-er AND -ir

69.

Paradigms

puer, *boy*

ager, *field*

vir, *man*

Stem **puero-**

Stem **agro-**

Stem **viro-**

Base **puer-**

Base **agr-**

Base **vir-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **puer**

ager

vir

GEN. **puerī**

agrī

virī

DAT. **puerō**

agrō

virō

ACC. **puerum**

agrum

virum

ABL. **puerō**

agrō

virō

PLURAL

NOM. **puerī**

agrī

virī

GEN. **puerōrum**

agrōrum

virōrum

DAT. **puerīs**

agrīs

virīs

ACC. **puerōs**

agrōs

virōs

ABL. **puerīs**

agrīs

virīs

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no **e** before **r**.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **liberī**, *children*.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber , librī , m., <i>book</i> .	Gallus , ī , m., <i>a Gaul</i> .
liberī , liberōrum , m. (plur.), <i>children</i> .	vir , virī , m., <i>man</i> .
magister , magistrī , m., <i>teacher</i> .	puer , puerī , m., <i>boy</i> .
ager , agrī , m., <i>field</i> .	discipulus , ī , m., <i>pupil</i> .
	multus , a, um, <i>much</i> ; plur., <i>many</i> .

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmentī est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidī magnī equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vita Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram insulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many¹ sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

¹ *Many sturdy = many and sturdy.*

are summoning many troops into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multī librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cūm in oppidū portāmus. 4. Liber meō discipulō est grātus. 5. Rēgīna liberōs in oppidū convocat. 6. Discipulī magistrī amīcūm laudant. 7. Multi agricolae nūc in agrō sunt. 8. Filia mea liberōs magistrī laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpāt. 11. Ubi nūc sunt filiae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvā portant.



A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, **(-e)ra**, **(-e)rum**

74.

filius, *son*Stem **fili-**Base **fili-****proelium**, *battle*Stem **proelio-**Base **proeli-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **filius****proelium**GEN. **fili** (**filiī**)**proelī** (**proeliī**)DAT. **filiō****proeliō**ACC. **filiū****proelium**VOC. **fili****proelium**ABL. **filiō****proeliō**

PLURAL

NOM. **filiī****proelia**GEN. **filiōrum****proeliōrum**DAT. **filiīs****proeliīs**ACC. **filiōs****proelia**VOC. **filiī****proelia**ABL. **filiīs****proeliīs**

1. The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-ī** (not **-iī**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsīlium**, *plan*; (gen.) **cōnsīlī**.¹
2. In proper names in **-ius** and **filius**, the vocative singular ends in **-ī**: **fili**, (*O*) *son*; **Mercurius**, (voc.) **Mercūri**,¹ (*O*) *Mercury*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.
3. Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

¹ In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75.

 liber, *free*

Stem libero-

Base liber-

SINGULAR

Masculine
Feminine
Neuter

NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
		etc.	

 pulcher, *beautiful*

Stem pulchro-

Base pulchr-

SINGULAR

NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
		etc.	

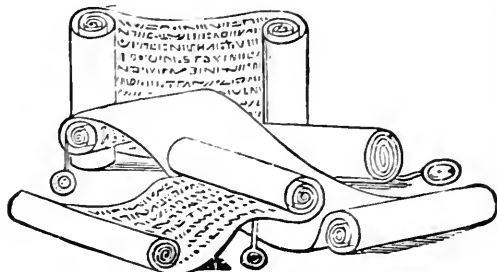
1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er**, **-era**, **-erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er**, **-ra**, **-rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberī, liberōrum, m. (plur.), children.

liber, librī, m., book.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Endings

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 27, 28)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in -er that have e before the r of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

filius, fili, m., <i>son</i> .	proelium, proeli, n., <i>battle</i> .
nūntius, i, m., <i>messenger</i> .	miser, misera, miserum,
gladius, i, m., <i>sword</i> .	<i>wretched, poor</i> .
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	asper, aspera, asperum, <i>rough,</i>
<i>beautiful, pretty</i> .	<i>fierce</i> .
tener, tenera, tenerum, <i>tender, delicate, dainty</i> .	niger, nigra, nigrum, <i>black</i> .
aedificium, i, n., <i>building</i> .	piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>slow,</i>
	<i>lazy</i> .

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārci amīci sunt multī equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistri, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multi agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Italiae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī liberōs in oppidum convocant?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fili, librī sunt? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificiū portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna mei amīci filiis et filiābus grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpat?

10. Nūntī filiō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,¹ are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

(READING SELECTION 443)

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF **sum**. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
		SINGULAR	
1. eram, <i>I was</i>		1. erō, <i>I shall be</i>	
2. erās, <i>you were</i>		2. eris, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erat, <i>he was, there was</i>		3. erit, <i>he will be, there will be</i>	
		PLURAL	
1. erāmus, <i>we were</i>		1. erimus, <i>we shall be</i>	
2. erātis, <i>you were</i>		2. eritis, <i>you will be</i>	
3. erant, <i>they were, there were</i>		3. erunt, <i>they will be, there will be</i>	

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of **sum**?

82. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

¹ Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.

The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. **Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal¹ order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence **fidōs** is more emphatic than in the first. In the third **agricolās fidōs** and **Caesar** are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., **vīta**, *vital*; **nauta**, *nautical*. Also, watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., **ager**, *field*; **agricola**, *farmer*. Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.

¹ The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	nūntius	pecūnia	amīcus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rosa	inopia	stella	filia	
cibus	nauta	equus	filius	

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis. 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Fīlīi agricolae erant parvī. 6. Filia nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn erant pigrī. 9. Ubi gladius meī amīcī erat? 10. In magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were; he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON II

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the **-re** of the present infinitive active. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	amāre , <i>to love</i>	ā
II.	monēre , <i>to advise</i>	ē
III.	regere , <i>to rule</i>	e
IV.	audire , <i>to hear</i>	i

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
amō <i>I love</i>	amā re <i>to love</i>	amāv i <i>I have loved</i>	amāt us <i>loved</i>
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87.

Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābō**, *I shall love*
2. **amābis**, *you will love*
3. **amābit**, *he will love*

PLURAL

1. **amābimus**, *we shall love*
2. **amābitis**, *you will love*
3. **amābunt**, *they will love*

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem amā- imperf., amā-bam

amō pres. stem amā- fut., amā-bō

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, parāre, parāvī, parātus (*perf. part.*)

laudō, *praise*, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus

culpō, *blame*, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus

convocō, *summon*, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus

89.

VOCABULARY

locus, ī, m., plur., locī, m., idōneus, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

and loca, n., *place*.

parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare*.

praemium, ī, n., *reward*.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pro-*

pilum, ī, n., *javelin*.

vide, get (bring) together.

saxum, ī, n., *rock*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.

tēlum, ī, n., *weapon*.

hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

castra, ōrum, n. (plur.), *camp*.

90.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī filiābus agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cūr fidum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocat. 5. Inopia cibī et vinī virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multī gladii semper in oppidō sunt.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castris idōneus? 9. Filii praemium erit pulchrum pilum. 10. Idōneās hastās virīs dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pila sunt in castris. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō*, *I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
1. amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i>	-ī
2. amāvistī, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istī
3. amāvit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it
PLURAL	
1. amāvimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. amāvistis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istis
3. amāvērunt, or amāvēre, ¹ <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	-ērunt(-ēre ¹)

¹ This form is rare. Always use the forms in -ērunt.

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on; repeated, or continued* in past time.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:

1. *Hastis et sagittis pugnābant, they fought with spears and arrows.*
2. *Equis frumentum portābimus, we shall bring grain by means of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives *hastis*, *sagittis*, *equis* express the *means* or *instrument*, the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE. — Ablative of Means or Instrument. — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

<i>lēgātus</i> , ī, m., <i>ambassador</i> , <i>lieutenant</i> .	<i>dō</i> , dare, <i>dedī</i> , ¹ <i>datus</i> , <i>give</i> .
<i>Graecus</i> , ī, m., <i>a Greek</i> .	<i>oppugnō</i> , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>attack</i> , <i>besiege</i> .
<i>paucī</i> , ae, a, <i>few</i> , <i>a few</i> .	<i>arma</i> , ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>arms</i> , <i>weapons</i> .
<i>superō</i> , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>sur-</i> <i>pass, conquer, overcome</i> .	<i>hīberna</i> , ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>win-</i> <i>ter quarters</i> .
<i>armō</i> , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>arm</i> , <i>equip</i> .	<i>Helvētius</i> , ī, m., <i>a Helvetian</i> .

¹ Note the irregular perfect.

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominus meus dōna filiābus dabit. 2. Nautae fidī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servi pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētīi oppidum saxī et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servi multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmānī Helvētiōrum oppida sagittīs et pilīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās insulae tēlīs armābimus. 10. In hibernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastīs et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus hibernīs idōneus est.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

(READING SELECTION 444)

*Pilum*

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō, I love*

SINGULAR

1. *amāveram, I had loved*
2. *amāverās, you had loved*
3. *amāverat, he had loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverāmus, we had loved*
2. *amāverātis, you had loved*
3. *amāverant, they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. *amāverō, I shall have loved*
2. *amāveris, you will have loved*
3. *amāverit, he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverimus, we shall have loved*
2. *amāveritis, you will have loved*
3. *amāverint, they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem *amāv-* and *-eram*; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and *-erō*. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + bam .
Future Tense,	Present stem + bō .
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + eram .
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + erō .

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

laudō	vocō	parō	oppugnō	servō
culpō	convocō	dō	portō	superō

I. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101. VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, ¹	ferus, a, um, wild, barbarous.
hasten (usually with an infinitive; never followed by ad and the acc.).	impedimentum, ī, n., hindrance; (plur.), baggage.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, capture, take by storm.	vīcus, ī, m., village.
mox, adv., soon.	ad, prep. with acc., to, towards, near.

¹ The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in -um, or the future active participle in -ūrus, if they occur, are used.

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolās oppidī superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Galli parābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pilīs armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautāe peritō dēdērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocābant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedimenta in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēgīnam portābant. 7. Rēginae cōpiae ferae erant. 8. Ad¹ oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vicōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad¹ impedimenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam² pecūniam incolīs nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ near.² = much.

LESSON 14

 SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS: *moneō, I advise, warn, monēre, monuī, monitus*
videō, I see, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus

PRES.	<i>moneō, I warn</i>	<i>videō, I see</i>
IMPF.	<i>monēbam, I warned</i>	<i>vidēbam, I saw</i>
FUT.	<i>monēbō, I shall warn</i>	<i>vidēbō, I shall see</i>
PERF.	<i>monuī, I have warned</i>	<i>vīdī, I have seen</i>
PLUP.	<i>monueram, I had warned</i>	<i>videram, I had seen</i>
FUT. PF.	<i>monuerō, I shall have warned</i>	<i>viderō, I shall have seen</i>

 105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

{	SING.	1. <i>moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise</i>
		2. <i>monēs, you advise, etc.</i>
		3. <i>monet, he advises, etc.</i>
	PLUR.	1. <i>monēmus, we advise, etc.</i>
		2. <i>monētis, you advise, etc.</i>
		3. <i>monent, they advise, etc.</i>

1. Observe that the *-ē-* of the present stem, unlike the *-ā-* of *amō*, is retained before the personal ending *-o* of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of *moneō*? of *amō*?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **monēō**

SINGULAR

1. **mónuī**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. **monuísti**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **mónuit**, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **monúimus**, *we have advised, etc.*
2. **monuístis**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **monuérunt** (**monuére**), *they have advised, etc.*

- I. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of **amō**. Note that the perfect stem **monu-** does not end in **v**, as in **amō**, perfect stem **amāv-**.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, hold*
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, *I see*

108.

VOCABULARY

monēō, monēre, monuī, monitus , <i>advise, warn.</i>	<i>move; castra movēre, break up camp.</i>
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus , <i>have, hold.</i>	dimicō, āre, āvī, ātum , <i>fight, contend.</i>
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus , <i>see.</i>	praeda, ae, f. , <i>booty, spoil.</i>
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus , <i>frighten, scare.</i>	periculum, ī, n. , <i>danger.</i>
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus ,	cum , prep. with abl., <i>with.</i>

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs tēlīs¹ Galli cum Rōmānīs pugnābant.
2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant. 3. Ad
portam liberōs portāvērunt. 4. Paucōs librōs amīcō meō
dedī. 5. Rōmānī multa arma in hiberna portābunt.
6. Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins.
2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not
always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my
friend a book?

110.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vīdit; terruerat. 2. Viderimus; mōvistī;
habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī
cum Helvētiīs dīmīcābant. 5. Perīculum magnum oppidī
incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vīcīs multam vīdērunt.
7. Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vīdistīne tuum
perīculum? 9. Puerī multa praemia habēbunt. 10. Rō-
mānī gladiīs et pīlīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam
frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have
had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have
fought. 3. The Gauls broke up camp. 4. They had con-
tended with the inhabitants. 5. The messenger frightened
the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great danger in
wine.

¹ In apposition with saxīs (see 58).



Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

111. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in *-i*.

112.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

Stem and Base }	<i>dux</i> , m., <i>leader, general</i>	<i>miles</i> , m., <i>soldier</i>	<i>virtūs</i> , f., <i>virtue</i>	<i>caput</i> , n., <i>head</i>		
	<i>duc-</i>	<i>milit-</i>	<i>virtūt-</i>	<i>capit-</i>		
					CASE ENDINGS OF CONSONANT STEMS	
					<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
					SINGULAR	
NOM.	<i>dux</i>	<i>miles</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>caput</i>	(-s)	
GEN.	<i>ducis</i>	<i>militis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	-is	-is
DAT.	<i>duci</i>	<i>militi</i>	<i>virtūti</i>	<i>capiti</i>	-i	-i
ACC.	<i>ducem</i>	<i>militem</i>	<i>virtūtem</i>	<i>caput</i>	-em	
ABL.	<i>duce</i>	<i>milite</i>	<i>virtūte</i>	<i>capite</i>	-e	-e
					PLURAL	
NOM.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a
GEN.	<i>ducum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>virtutum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	-um	-um
DAT.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a
ABL.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus

1. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25). Both are obtained by dropping the ending *-is* of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux, **ducis**, m., *leader, general*. **rēx**, **rēgis**, m., *king*.
miles, **militis**, m., *soldier*. **fuga**, ae. f., *flight*.
eques, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **in fugam dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**,
 (plur.) *cavalry, cavalrymen*. *put to flight*.
virtūs, **virtūtis**, f., *manliness*, **augeō**, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**,
bravery, virtue. *increase, enlarge*.
caput, **capitis**, n., *head*.

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs ferīs dīmīcābant? 3. Perīculum fili videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castrīs viderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox filiae?

II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Militēs impedimenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs mīlitum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiīs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Mīlitibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹cōpia.

(READING SELECTION 445)



Eques

LESSON 16

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

Stem and Base }	cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i> ¹	homō, m., <i>man</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>
	cōnsul-	homin-	patr-	corpor-

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsuli	hominī	patrī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsule m	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsul um	homin um	patr um	corpor um
DAT.	cōnsul ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus	corpor ibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsul ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus	corpor ibus

1. Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum**.

¹ The title of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following:

1. *Dux victoriā laetus est, the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. *Hominēs cibī inopiā labōrābant, the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (a) that the ablatives *victoriā*, *inopiā*, express the *cause* or *reason*; (b) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of*, *on account of*, *from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. RULE. — Ablative of Cause. — Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.¹

119.

VOCABULARY

<i>cōsul</i> , <i>cōsulis</i> , m., <i>consul</i> .	<i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i> , n., <i>time</i> ,
<i>homō</i> , <i>hominis</i> , m., <i>man</i> .	<i>season</i> .
<i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i> , m., <i>father</i> .	<i>vulnus</i> , <i>vulneris</i> , n., <i>wound</i> .
<i>corpus</i> , <i>corporis</i> , n., <i>body</i> .	<i>vulnerō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>wound</i> .
<i>flūmen</i> , <i>flūminis</i> , n., <i>river</i> .	<i>labōrō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātūrus</i> , <i>work</i> ,
<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , m., <i>foot</i> .	<i>suffer</i> .
<i>pedes</i> , <i>peditis</i> , m., <i>foot-soldier</i> ;	<i>trāns</i> , prep. with acc., <i>across</i> ,
plur., <i>infantry</i> .	<i>over</i> .

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat.* 2. *Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus.* 3. *Militēs perītī in castra arma portāvērunt.* 4. *Ducī fidō magnam pecūniam Rōmānī dederant.* 5. *Magna cōpia frūmentī mox in vicō erit.* 6. *Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?*

¹ This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus militum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidī. 6. Miles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pīlis vulnerāvērunt. 9. Militēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs militēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Coin of Caesar

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN -i-

122.

STEMS IN -i-

Paradigms

	collis , m., <i>hill</i>	caedēs , f., <i>slaughter</i>	mōns , m., <i>mountain</i>	animal , n., <i>animal</i>
Stem	colli-	caedi-	monti-	animāli-
Base	coll-	caed-	mont-	animāl-
SINGULAR				CASE ENDINGS OF -i- STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i>
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal (-s)
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis -is -is
DAT.	collī	caedī	montī	animālī -ī -ī
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal -em
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī -e -ī
PLURAL				
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia -ēs -ia
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium -ium -ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus -ibus -ibus
ACC.	collis,ēs	caedis,ēs	montis,ēs	animālia -is,-ēs -ia
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus -ibus -ibus

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in *-i* and in *-e*, though usually in *-i*: *nāvis*, *ship*; *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*; *turris*, *tower*; *finis*, *end*; *avis*, *bird*. All neuter *-i-* stems have the ablative singular in *-ī*. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in *-im*: *turris*, *turrim*, *tower*.
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra*, *beautiful city*; *animal magnum*, *large animal*.

123. Since nouns with *-i-* stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have *-i-* stems. The following classes have *-i-* stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. *Nouns in -is and -ēs, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.*
2. *Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.*
3. *Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x following a consonant.*
4. *Nouns in -ns and -rs.*

124. Decline the following:

<i>mare, maris</i> , n., <i>sea</i> .	<i>nōmen, nōminis</i> , n., <i>name</i> .
<i>urbs, urbis</i> , f., <i>city</i> .	<i>pars, partis</i> , f., <i>part</i> .
<i>miles, militis</i> , m., <i>soldier</i> .	<i>pōns, pontis</i> , m., <i>bridge</i> .
<i>hostis, hostis</i> , m. and f., <i>enemy</i> (usually plural).	<i>sedile, sedilis</i> , n., <i>seat</i> .

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with *-i-* stems.)

<i>collis, collis</i> , m., <i>hill</i> .	<i>animal, animālis</i> , n., <i>animal</i> .
<i>caedēs, caedis</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i> .	<i>nāvis, nāvis</i> , f., <i>ship</i> .
<i>mōns, montis</i> , m., <i>mountain</i> .	<i>per</i> , prep. with acc. <i>through</i> , <i>by-means-of</i> .
<i>laetus, a, um</i> , <i>glad</i> .	<i>dē</i> , prep. with abl., <i>down</i> <i>from, from, concerning</i> .
<i>occupō, āre, āvi, ātus</i> , <i>take-</i> <i>possession-of, seize, occupy</i> .	

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Meī patris amīcus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Gallī equitum peritōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Multa vulnera in corporibus militum vidistī. 5. Peditēs trāns flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs dē monte in vīcum impedimenta portābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī. 3. Nōne militēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt? 4. Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant multa et fera animālia. 9. Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go² from the hill into the broad fields.

¹ *Many lazy = many and lazy.* See 127, I, 2, 8.

ire.

LESSON 18

 REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE
OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender. — For the general rules for gender see 28.

The rules for gender for the third declension are these, but there are many exceptions :

- 1. Masculine.** — Masculine are nouns in **-ō** (genitive **-ōnis**), **-or** (genitive **-ōris**), **-tor** (genitive **-tōris**), **-er** (genitive **-ris**; cf. **pater**, **patris**), **-es** (genitive **-itis**), **-eps** (genitive **-ipis**), **-ex** (genitive **-icis**).
- 2. Feminine.** — Feminine are nouns in **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-rs** (genitive **-rtis**; cf. **ars**, **artis**), **-is** and **-ēs** (if genitive is in **-is**), **-dō** or **-gō** (genitive **-dinis**, **-ginis**), and **-iō** (genitive **-iōnis**).
- 3. Neuter.** — Neuter are nouns in **-al** (genitive **-ālis**), **-en**, **-ar** (genitive **-āris**), **-ur** (genitive **-oris**), **-us** (genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), **-t**, **-e** (genitive **-is**).

- 1. What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions ?**

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	eques	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	mīles	pedes	urbs
cōnsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs

130. Examine the following :

1. Hieme labōrāmus, *in winter we work.*
2. Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vidit, *within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. Primā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt, *at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives **hieme**, **decem mēnsibus**, **primā lūce**, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. RULE. — **Ablative of Time.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

132.

VOCABULARY

nox, noctis, f. (gen. plur. noctium), <i>night.</i>	annus, i, m., <i>year.</i>
hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter.</i>	primus, a, um, <i>first.</i>
aestās, aestātis, f., <i>summer.</i>	decem, indecl., <i>ten.</i>
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light, daylight.</i>	quattuor, indecl., <i>four.</i>
	multā nocte, <i>late at night.</i>

133.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbis dēlectant.
 2. Primā lūce¹ multōs montēs vidimus. 3. Hostēs tēlis equitēs vulnerābant. 4. Quattuor annis multa oppida hostium dux expugnāverat. 5. Cibi inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant. 6. Multā nocte cōsul peditēs in castra convocābit. 7. Multās urbēs decem annis dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat. 8. Primō annō bellī multa oppida expugnāverat. 9. Primā lūce hostēs in castris erant.

II. 1. He captured the city by-means-of his cavalry.
 2. At night the enemy hastened to go toward the Romans'

¹ Primā lūce, *at daybreak.*

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹ 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At day-break we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

(READING SELECTION 446)

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural **pulchra** means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Head of Julius Cæsar
(From a silver coin, 38-36 B.C.)

135.

THE HELVETIAN WAR

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136.

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION

1. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above, 136, 1-4.*)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētīi sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Ōceanī quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 10.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of incolō. Can you not infer its meaning from incolā?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE.

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer*.

139.

Paradigms

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. amō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		-ō
2. amās, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-s
3. amat, <i>he loves, etc.</i>		-t
	PLURAL	
1. amāmus, <i>we love, etc.</i>		-mus
2. amātis, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-tis
3. amant, <i>they love, etc.</i>		-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR	
1. amor, <i>I am loved, am being loved</i>		-r
2. amāris, amāre, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>		-ris, -re
3. amātur, <i>he is loved, etc.</i>		-tur
	PLURAL	
1. amāmur, <i>we are loved, etc.</i>		-mur
2. amāmini, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>		-mini
3. amantur, <i>they are loved, etc.</i>		-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS

- | | |
|---|----|
| 1. moneō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i> | -ō |
| 2. monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -s |
| 3. monet, <i>he advises, etc.</i> | -t |

PLURAL

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| 1. monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i> | -mus |
| 2. monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -tis |
| 3. monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i> | -nt |

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. moneor, <i>I am advised, am being advised</i> | -r |
| 2. monēris, monēre, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -ris, -re |
| 3. monētur, <i>he is advised, etc.</i> | -tur |

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. monēmur, <i>we are advised, etc.</i> | -mur |
| 2. monēmini, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -mini |
| 3. monentur, <i>they are advised, etc.</i> | -ntur |

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

laudō, *I praise*

vocō, *I call*

videō, *I see*

terreō, *I frighten*

141. Examine the following :

1. *Coniūrātī Caesarem necant, the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. *Caesar ā coniūrātīs necātur, Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. *Caesar gladiō necātur, Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive :
 - a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
 - b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ā*.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE. — **Agency with the Passive Voice.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb (i.e. the person by whom something is done) is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar, aris, m., <i>Caesar</i> .	celeritās, ātis; f., <i>speed, quickness.</i>
legiō, ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> (about 5000 soldiers).	incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.</i>
necō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>kill.</i>	ē, ex, ¹ prep. with abl., <i>out of, from.</i>
ā, ab, ¹ prep. with abl., <i>from, by.</i>	propter, prep. with acc., <i>on-account-of, for.</i>
ob, prep. with acc., <i>on-account-of, for.</i>	

¹ Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use *ab* or *ex*; use *ā* or *ē* before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlis Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvis in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum miserī sumus.

II. 1. In winter the nights are long. 2. Caesar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēmini. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar militēs convocat. 4. Militēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob² virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter² virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibī cōpia ā militibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte militum incolae oppidī incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā militibus in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains to the city.

¹ over.

² In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, ob or propter with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. Ob is used especially in connection with rem or causam.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND
SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābar, *I was loved, was
being loved*
2. amābāris, amābāre, *you
were loved, etc.*
3. amābātur, *he was loved,
etc.*

SINGULAR

1. monēbar, *I was advised,
was being advised*
2. monēbāris, monēbāre, *you
were advised, etc.*
3. monēbātur, *he was ad-
vised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. amābāmur, *we were loved,
etc.*
2. amābāmini, *you were
loved, etc.*
3. amābantur, *they were
loved, etc.*

PLURAL

1. monēbāmur, *we were ad-
vised, etc.*
2. monēbāmini, *you were ad-
vised, etc.*
3. monēbantur, *they were
advised, etc.*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābor, *I shall be loved*
2. amāberis, amābere, *you
will be loved*
3. amābitur, *he will be loved*

SINGULAR

1. monēbor, *I shall be ad-
vised*
2. monēberis, monēbere, *you
will be advised*
3. monēbitur, *he will be ad-
vised*

PLURAL

1. amābimur, *we shall be loved*
2. amābiminī, *you will be loved*
3. amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. monēbimur, *we shall be advised*
2. monēbiminī, *you will be advised*
3. monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is **a** in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems **amā-** and **monē-** by adding **-bār** and **-bōr** respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. Agricola cum cūrā arat, *the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
 2. Agricola magnā cum¹ cūrā arat
 3. Agricola magnā cūrā arat
- } *the farmer plows with great care (very carefully)*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions **cum cūrā**, **magnā cum cūrā**, **magnā cūrā**, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That **magnā cum cūrā** and **magnā cūrā** are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

¹ Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE. — **Ablative of Manner.** — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149.

VOCABULARY

studium, ī, n., <i>zeal, eagerness.</i>	imperātor, ōris, m., <i>general,</i>
cūra, ae, f., <i>care.</i>	<i>commander in chief.</i>
obses, obsidis, m. and f., <i>host-</i>	conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>place,</i>
<i>age, pledge.</i>	<i>station.</i>
multitūdō, multitudinis, f.,	compleō, complēre, complēvī,
<i>multitude, crowd.</i>	complētus, <i>fill up, complete.</i>
imperium, ī, n., <i>command,</i>	diū, adv., <i>long, for a long</i>
<i>power.</i>	<i>time.</i>

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitum celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallīs occupātur. 6. Militēs ā rēge in hīberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took-possession-of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmīcābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitūdine complēvit. 9. Liberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

II. 1. You will see, you will be seen. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought eagerly. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

(READING SELECTION 447)

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	amātus, {	amātī, {	sumus
	sum, <i>I have been loved,</i> I was loved		
2.	a, um {	ae, a {	estis
	es		
3.	est		sunt

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

1.	amātus, {	amātī, {	erāmus
	eram, <i>I had been</i> loved		
2.	a, um {	ae, a {	erātis
	erās		
3.	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	amātus, {	amātī, {	erimus
2.	a, um {	ae, a {	eritis
3.	{		erunt
	erō, <i>I shall have</i> been loved		
	eris		
	erit		

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of **moneō**, **videō**, **portō**, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like **bonus**, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum
we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus
the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat
the girl has been loved, puella amāta est

3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship, alliance.</i>	cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>
pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>	civitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizenship.</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i>	cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>strengthen, establish.</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road, journey (501).</i>	contineō, continēre, continui, <i>hold together, restrain, hem in, bound.</i>
ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i>	

154.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Cives ob amicitiam laudavimus. 5. Galli montibus et fluminibus continebantur. 6. Multa oppida decem mensibus occupata erant. 7. Magna Helvetiorum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Multum frumentum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar milites in castris habebat. 10. Multi homines a Romanis erant necati. 11. Multos civis in Italia vidimus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magno cum studio oppugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.



Civis

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE
TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

ācer, sharp, keen, eager

Stem *ācri-*

Base *ācr-*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

1. Note that adjectives of this declension have *-i-* stems, and that the ablative singular ends in *-ī*. Review 122.

156. Examine the following:

1. *Helvētīī Gallōs virtūte superant, the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. Vir nōmine, nōn factis, amicus erat, *the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives *virtūte*, *nōmine*, *factis*, tell in what respect the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE. — Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

altus, a, um, <i>high, deep.</i>	finis, finis, m., <i>end; (plur.) boundary, territory.</i>
angustus, a, um, <i>narrow, contracted.</i>	finitimus, a, um, <i>neighboring, adjoining; finitimī, ōrum, m., neighbors.</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i>	quod, conj., <i>because.</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, sharp, eager, fierce.</i>	-que, <i>and</i> , an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected.
equester, equestris, equestre, <i>of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).</i>	magnitūdō, inis, f., <i>greatness, size.</i>

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux filium propter virtutem laudāverat. 2. Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis civitatibus erat cōfirmāta. 3. Multā nocte cōpiae ex agris in castra convocābantur. 4. Militēs hieme in hiberna convocāti sunt. 5. Multī incolae gladiis equitum vulnerātī erant.

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiorum finibus erant. 2. Iter per finēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmānī virtūte, nōn magnitūdine corporis, Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesare laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Acrēs peritaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōsulis. 8. Pedītēs Caesaris proeliō acrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētīi ā ducibus incitātī sunt? Quod altīs montibus et flūminibus lātīs continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestrī proeliō superātī erant.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Notice to which word *-que* is added. Translate *-que* before the word to which it is attached.



Galli

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following :

facilis, easy

Stem **facili-**

Base **facil-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

NOM.	facilis
GEN.	facilis
DAT.	facilī
ACC.	facile m
ABL.	facilī

Neuter

facile
facilis
facilī
facile
facilī

PLURAL

NOM.	facilēs
GEN.	facilium
DAT.	facilibus
ACC.	facilīs (ēs)
ABL.	facilibus

facilia
facilium
facilibus
facilia
facilibus

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following :

audāx, bold

Stem *audāci-*

Base *audāc-*

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

Neuter

NOM. *audāx*

audāx

GEN. *audācis*

audācis

DAT. *audācī*

audācī

ACC. *audācem*

audāx

ABL. *audācī (e)*

audācī (e)

PLURAL

NOM. *audācēs*

audācia

GEN. *audācium*

audācium

DAT. *audācibus*

audācibus

ACC. *audācīs (ēs)*

audācia

ABL. *audācibus*

audācibus

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in *-er* have three terminations, those in *-is* two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have *-i-* stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following :

1. *Filius patrī similis erat, the son was like his father.*
2. *Locus castris idōneus erat, the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives *patri* and *castris* are related to the adjectives *similis* and *idōneus*.

163. RULE. — **Dative with Adjectives.** — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.

VOCABULARY

<i>fortis, e, brave, strong.</i>	<i>omnis, e, all, every, the whole.</i>
<i>similis, e, like, similar.</i>	<i>brevis, e, brief, short</i>
<i>dissimilis, e, dissimilar,</i> <i>unlike.</i>	<i>pār, gen. paris, equal (to).</i>
<i>facilis, e, easy.</i>	<i>vetus,¹ gen. veteris, old, ancient.</i>
<i>difficilis, e, difficult.</i>	<i>gēns, gentis, f., race, nation.</i>
	<i>populus, i, m., people.</i>

165.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Helvētīi flūminibus altīs continēbantur.* 2. *Ad flūmen iter angustum erat.* 3. *Cūr finitimī nostrī terrentur? Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāvimus.* 4. *Caesar equestribus proeliis Gallōs superāvit.* 5. *Peditēs nostrī altīs flūminibus terrēbantur.* 6. *Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.*

II. 1. *There are many beautiful ships on the sea.* 2. *Our cavalry were fierce in battle.* 3. *Why were they frightened? Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains.* 4. *The bridges have been taken-possession-of by the enemy.*

166.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs.* 2. *Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant.* 3. *Militēs*

¹ This is not an *-i-* stem; its ablative singular is formed in *-e*.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevi tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētīi multitudine hominū populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā milite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multis imperātōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Finitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people² was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

(READING SELECTION 448)

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorix, qui³ princeps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit (*formed*) et cum finitimis civitatibus pacem amicitiamque cōfirmāvit. Helvētīi undique nātūrā loci continentur, unā ex parte⁴ flūmine Rhēnō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit,⁵ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Quā dē causā⁶ finēs Helvētiōrum angustī erant prō⁷ multitudine hominum, et ēmigrāre⁸ cupiēbant.⁹

¹ Use -que. ² **populus Rōmānus.** ³ The relative pronoun *who, which, that.*
⁴ **unā ex parte,** *on one side.* ⁵ Third person singular of **dīvidō.** ⁶ **Quā dē causā,**
for this reason. ⁷ *in proportion to.* ⁸ *to emigrate.* ⁹ Third person plural im-
perfect of **cupiō.**

LESSON 26

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

PRIN. PARTS: **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	SINGULAR	
1. fui , <i>I have been,</i> <i>I was</i>	fueram , <i>I had been</i>	fuerō , <i>I shall have</i> <i>been</i>
2. fuistī	fuerās	fueris
3. fuit	fuerat	fuerit
	PLURAL	
1. fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
2. fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
3. fuērunt (fuēre)	fuerant	fuerint

1. Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-eram** and **-erō**.
2. Are the personal endings regular?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb?

pugnō	conlocō	videō	laudō	superō	mātūrō
expugnō	cōnfirmō	contineō	culpō	armō	incitō
oppugnō	comparō	compleō	servō	occupō	labōrō
vocō	augeō	moveō	dēlectō	vulnerō	necō
convocō	habeō	moneō	dō	dīmicō	terreō
			portō		

1. What is the force of **con** (**com**) in a compound verb?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of *incitō*. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of *habeō* in the second person and *augeō* in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS : *incitō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*, *arouse*, *urge on*

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
Present Stem <i>incitā-</i>	PRES.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>incitat</i>	<i>incitātur</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i> <i>incitant</i>	<i>incitantur</i>	
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>incitābat</i>	<i>incitābātur</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i> <i>incitābant</i>	<i>incitābantur</i>	
Perfect Stem <i>incitāv-</i>	FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>		Participial Stem <i>incitāt-</i>
		<i>Plur.</i>		
	PERF.	<i>Sing.</i>		
		<i>Plur.</i>		
	PLUP.	<i>Sing.</i>		
		<i>Plur.</i>		
	FUT.	<i>Sing.</i>		
		<i>Plur.</i>		

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*, *lay waste, ravage.* *reliquus*, *a*, *um*, *the-rest-of, remaining.*

libertās, *ātis*, *f.*, *liberty, freedom.* *potēns*, *potentis*, *able, powerful.*

prō, *prep. with abl., before, in behalf of, for.*

172.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Fuerātis*; *fuerimus*; *fuistis*. 2. *Gallōrum finēs ab equitibus vāstātī erant*. 3. *Reliquī hostēs prō libertāte diū pugnāverant*. 4. *Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs*.

5. Paucis annis bello finitimis Helvetiis superaverant.
 6. Pro feminis liberisque magnō cum studio pugnabant.
 7. Reliquae in Gallia gentes a nostris finitimis incitatae sunt.
 8. Caesar cum quattuor legionibus fines Helvetiorum vastare maturabit.
 9. Legionēs populi Romani magnitudine corporis Gallorum terrebantur.
 10. Servus domino virtute erat similis.
 11. Altis montibus et latis fluminibus oppidum continetur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge.
 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste.
 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful.
 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed.
 5. The citizens will fight for the general.
 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight.
 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173.

ducō, I lead

PRIN. PARTS: ducō, ducere, duxi, ductus

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **ducō** (518).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of **ducō** with the present of **monēō** and **amō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of **dūcō** with the future of **moneō**, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short -e*, that of the second conjugation *long -ē*.
6. Like **dūcō** conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of **mittō**, *send*, and **vincō**, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

dūcō , ere, dūxī , ductus, <i>lead</i> .	gerō , gerere, gessi , gestus, <i>carry on, wage</i> .
mittō , ere, mīsī , missus, <i>send</i> .	
vincō , ere, vīcī , victus, <i>conquer</i> .	incolō , ere, incolui, —, <i>inhabit</i> .
relinquō , ere, reliquī , relictus, <i>leave behind, leave</i> .	neque . . . neque , <i>neither . . . nor</i> .
contendō , ere, contendī , contentum , <i>struggle, strive, hasten, hurry, march</i> .	saepe , adv., <i>often, frequently</i> .

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulis Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitudīne hominū erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vīcī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertāte magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētiī saepe cum finitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castrīs erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētiī magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincuntur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā insulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiis Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

(READING SELECTION 449)

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in iō in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

capiō, take

PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capiō* (520).

- I. Observe that the conjugation of *capiō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (518, 520).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

iaciō , iacere , iēcī , iactus , <i>throw, hurl.</i>	interficiō , interficere , interfēcī , interfectus , <i>kill.</i>
capiō , capere , cēpī , captus , <i>take, seize, capture, form.</i>	trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), ere , trādūxī , trāductus , <i>lead</i> <i>over, transport.</i>
fugiō , fugere , fūgī , —, <i>flee</i> , <i>run away.</i>	cōnsilium , ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>advice, prudence, plan.</i>
faciō , facere , fēcī , factus , <i>do</i> , <i>make</i> ; iter facere , <i>march</i> ; proelium facere , <i>fight a</i> <i>battle.</i>	moenia , moenium , <i>n.</i> (<i>plur.</i>), <i>walls, fortifications.</i>

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquent.** 2. **Neque peditibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt.** 3. **Estne iter ad oppidum facile?** 4. **Rōmānī in hostium fīnēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant.** 5. **Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōnsule vincentur.**

II. 1. The Helvetii often carried on war with their

neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūcīmur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum finēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus cōpiam frūmenti capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs interfecti erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōsilium proeli lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 10. Cōsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcīt. 11. Multi equitēs ā cōpiīs nostris interficientur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.² 5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their⁴ territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used⁵ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = make a march. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ used to form · use the imperfect of capiō.



Caricature of Soldier
(Pompeii)

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FIRST CONJ.	amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
SECOND CONJ.	monēre, <i>to advise</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>
THIRD CONJ.	dūcere, <i>to lead</i> capere, <i>to take</i>	dūcī, <i>to be led</i> capī, <i>to be taken</i>
FOURTH CONJ.	audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final -e to -ī, except in the third conjugation, which changes final -ere to -ī.

183. Examine the following :

1. Mātūrat militēs convocāre, *he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
 2. Laudārī est grātum, *to be praised is pleasant.*
 3. Incolās armārī iubet, *he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
 4. Omnēs primī esse cupimus, *we all wish to be first.*
 5. Dēbet interficī, *he ought to be killed.*
 6. Fortis esse dīcitur, *he is said to be brave.*
 7. Filiōs bonōs esse cupimus, *we wish our sons to be good.*
- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
- b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of est. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.

- c. In 3, observe that *incolās*, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So *filiōs* in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective *primī* agrees with the subject of the main verb, *cupimus*, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

<i>dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, say, speak, tell.</i>	<i>cōstituō, cōstituere, cōnstituī, cōstitutus, place, station, determine, appoint.</i>
<i>iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, order, bid.</i>	<i>parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready. [name.</i>
<i>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought.</i>	<i>appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, call, auxilium, ī, n., aid, help.</i>
<i>cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (īī), cupītus, wish, desire.</i>	<i>numerus, ī, m., number.</i>

186.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vir perītus esse dēbet. 2. Pater filium fortem esse cupit. 3. Helvētīi lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 4. Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre.

5. Helvētīi, inopiā cibī permōtī (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Galli cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amicus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētīis, incolīs Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dīcēbantur. 12. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATIONS OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētīi auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum cōpiamque frūmentī comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfirmāvērunt, et ad finitimās civitatēs Orgetorigem lēgātum mīsērunt. Casticus, Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amicus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, prīncipēs in suīs (*their*) civitatibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiam in mātirimōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīncipēs potentium civitātum inter sē³ iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² *for*. ³ *inter sē*, *one another* (literally, *among themselves*).

LESSON 31

 THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is. idem*

188. *Is, ea, id*

As adjective, *this, that* ; plur., *these, those*.

As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it* ; plur., *these, those, they*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>cae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN.	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
ACC.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

1. In what cases do the endings differ from those of *bonus* (62)? The stem is *-e-* or *-i-*.

189. *idem (is + dem), the same*

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>idem</i>	<i>éadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
GEN.	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
DAT.	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
ACC.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
ABL.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
	PLURAL		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>eīdem (īdem)</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>
ACC.	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
ABL.	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>

1. Observe that, in **idem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

1. **Is miles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised*.
2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that (man), i.e. him*.
3. **Amicum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend (i.e. the friend of him)*.
4. **Amicum eorum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend (i.e. the friend of them)*.
- a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid*.
- b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
- c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eorum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
- d. Decline together : **ea fēmina**, **id nōmen**, **is miles**.
- e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**. See also 196, c.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

- | | |
|------|--|
| NOM. | this, that; he, she, it. |
| GEN. | of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its. |
| DAT. | to <i>or</i> for this <i>or</i> that; to <i>or</i> for him, her, it. |
| ACC. | this, that; him, her, it. |
| ABL. | from, with, by this <i>or</i> that; from, with, by him, her, it. |

PLURAL

NOM. these, those; they.

GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.

DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.

ACC. these, those; them.

ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Labienus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (one of the subdivisions of the legion).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, *defend, protect.*

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, *influence, arouse.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, pitch* (a camp).

prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *leader, chief.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Militēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium magnus esse dīcitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; eī agricolae. 2. Eiusdem virī; eadem cohortēs; in eādē urbe. 3. Caesar, prīnceps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius militēs post

eam pugnam eum ob fortūnam laudāvērunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolīs libertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Fortūna belli nōn semper eadem est. 7. Labiēnus eāsdem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vicit. 8. In eōrum vicō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucīs mēnsibus multa proelia fēcit. 9. Helvētiī mūrōs eius oppidī magnā cum virtūte semper dēfendunt. 10. Eōsdem milītēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195. *quī, who, which, that, what*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

NOM.	who, which, that, what.
GEN.	of whom, whose, of which, of what.
DAT.	to <i>or</i> for whom, which, <i>or</i> what.
ACC.	whom, which, that, what.
ABL.	from, with, by whom, which, <i>or</i> what.

196. Examine the following:

1. **Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt**, *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. **Virōs quī in castris sunt laudat**, *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit**, *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. **Puella cui librum dedit fīda est**, *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. **Pīlum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit**, *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. **Is quī est fortis laudātur**, *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*

- a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; thus the antecedent of **quās** in 1 is **fēminae**. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
- b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, **quās** is accusative because it is the direct object of **vidēmus**; in 5, **quō** is ablative to express the instrument of the verb **vulnerātus sum**. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
- c. In 6, **is** does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. **Is** is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of **is**.

197. RULE.—Agreement of Relative Pronoun.—*A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case*.
 causam dicō, ere, dixī, dictus,

plead (one's) case.

vinculum, i, n., *chain*.

ex vinculis, *in chains*.

poena, ae, f., *punishment*.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy*.

nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *an-*
nounce, report.

coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum
 (only in the perfect, plu-
 perfect, and future perfect
 tense), *began*.

Orgetorīx, īgis, m., *Orgetorix*.

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum milītēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eīdem
 principī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte
 dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētiī et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius
 castra in eādē urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium milītēs
 in hīberna contendunt.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good
 fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought
 bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends
 the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the
 camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī causam coniūrātiōnis nūntiant quam
 Helvētiī fēcērunt. 2. Milītēs quōs in Galliā habent in
 eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorīx, quī eam coniūrā-
 tiōnem fēcerat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius
 coniūrātiō ab eis quī missī erant Caesari nūntiāta est.
 5. Ob eam coniūrātiōnem Helvētiī, quōrum lēgātī ā Caesare
 convocāti erant, permōtī sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis
 dicere poena est eius quī coniūrātiōnem fēcīt. 7. Causa
 bellī caedēs Rōmānōrum fuit quī in eā urbe fuērunt.
 8. Cum eis quōrum principēs id fēcērunt pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *hic* AND *ille*. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. *hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
ACC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

202. *ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
GEN.	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
ACC.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
ABL.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

1. Compare the endings of *ille* with those of *is* (188).

203. Examine the following:

1. **Hic** puer omnia, illa puella pauca vidit, *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
 2. **Caesar** et **Pompēius** erant Rōmānōrum principēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hic in Italiā remanēbat, *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
 3. **Nostrī** in castris erant, *our men were in camp.*
- a. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hic** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*; with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, 1.
- b. Decline together **haec urbs**, **hoc flūmen**.
- c. In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives **omnia**, **pauca**, **nostrī**, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204.

VOCABULARY

frāter, **frātris**, m., *brother*.
mors, **mortis**, f., *death*.
cliēns, **clientis**, m., *vassal*,
dependent.
nātiō, **ōnis**, f., *nation*.
ōrātiō, **ōnis**, f., *speech*.
cōgnōscō, **ere**, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgni-**
tus, *learn of, recognize*.

cōgō, **ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, *col-*
lect, compel, force.
ēripiō, **ere**, **ēripiū**, **ēreptus**,
snatch away, save.
sub, prep. with acc., *to the*
foot of; with abl., *under*,
at the foot of.

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi quī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dixit permōtī sunt. 3. Causa eius poenae coniūrātiō quam fēcērat erat. 4. Orgetorīx, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallīs fēcērant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ōrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēs ex vinculis causam dicet. 3. Nostrī hāc ōrātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitātēs quās diximus¹ lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illī ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorīx, prīnceps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius principis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illī quōs convocāvistī clientēs meī frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.² 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

¹ mention.

² Accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipe. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, self

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-ius** and **-ī**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
2. **Ipe** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself*; **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine), this (near me), my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; it means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours, your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that (of his or hers), that . . . yonder, yonder*.

2. Mention the pronouns that have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in **-ius** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-ius**). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (505), *other, another*.

alter, altera, alterum, *one (of two), the other (of two)*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both*.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two)*.

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any*.

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none*.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only*.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all*.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*.

210. Examine the following:

1. **Nostris finibus eōs prohibēbat**, *he kept them from our territories*.
 2. **Cibō caruerat**, *he had lacked food*.
 3. **Ex eā parte vicī discessit**, *he withdrew from that part of the village*.
- a. Observe that the ablatives **finibus**, **cibō**, and **parte** denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE. — **Ablative of Separation.** — *Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation*

takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used.

212.

VOCABULARY

<i>careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus,</i>	<i>rīpa, ae, f., bank (of river).</i>
<i>lack, be in need of, be</i>	<i>alter . . . alter, the one . . .</i>
<i>without.</i>	<i>the other (of two).</i>
<i>discēdō, ere, discessī, disces-</i>	<i>alius . . . alius, one . . . an-</i>
<i>sum, depart, withdraw.</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, free</i>	<i>alii . . . alii, some . . . others.</i>
<i>(from), liberate.</i>	<i>alii aliam in partem, some in</i>
<i>prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, pro-</i>	<i>one direction, some in an-</i>
<i>hibitus, keep away from.</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>prōvincia, ae, f., province.</i>	

213.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētīi in illīs castrīs ē periculō sunt ēreptī. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorigis principis illius eum cōgnōscant. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuerunt. 5. Huic militī arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hic liber est meus; ille gladius est militis; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētīī mīsērunt armīs carent.
 4. Hostēs utrāque ripā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā militibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Aliī in rīpīs aliī in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētīōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus liberāta est.
 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae aliī aliam in partem discēdent.
 10. Caesar et Orgetorix principēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who² was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE quis

215. **audiō, hear**

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, audire, audivī, auditus**

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of **audiō** (519).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long -ī-*; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **capiō** (520). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ See 211.

² *Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.*

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel *i* in the present tense of *audiō*, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of *audiō* are formed and conjugated exactly like those of *capiō*.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, who? which? what?

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL			
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

adjective only

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Quis hoc fēcit? <i>who did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative pronoun. |
| 2. Quid fēcistī? <i>what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit? <i>what man did this?</i> | |
| 4. Quam urbem vidēs? <i>what city do you see?</i> | } Used as an interrogative adjective. |
| 5. Quod dōnum amat puer? <i>what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. **Quis** is sometimes used for **quī**.
- b. When used as a pronoun, **quis** and **quid** are used in place of **quī** and **quod**. As a pronoun it has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

audiō, ire, audīvī, audītus,	cōsuētūdō, inis, f., <i>custom,</i> <i>hear.</i>
mūniō, ire, mūnivī, mūnītus,	clāmor, ōris, m., <i>shout, cry.</i> <i>fortify.</i>
veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum,¹ <i>come.</i>	labor, ōris, m., <i>work, labor.</i>
pūniō, ire, pūnivī, pūnītus,	iūdicium, ī, n., <i>trial, judg-</i> <i>ment.</i>
<i>punish.</i>	undique, adv., <i>from all sides.</i>

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste miles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; vērātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnivisti; pūnitae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs mīsimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlis vulnerātus est? Mīles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdiciū undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Ea cōnsilia sunt Helvētiīs per nūntiōs nūntiāta, et Orgetorīgē ex vīculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Coniūrātiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See page 107, footnote 2. ² Is this a relative or a demonstrative? ³ See 183, 2. ⁴ *quam ob rem, therefore, wherefore.*

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ per eius fugam incitāti sunt multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte multi rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

(READING SELECTION 452)

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -u-

cāsus, m.,
chance, misfortune

cornū, n.,
horn, wing

Stem cāsu-
Base cās-

Stem cornu-
Base corn-

		CASE ENDINGS	
		SINGULAR	
		<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
SINGULAR	SINGULAR		
NOM. cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN. cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT. cāsui (ū)	cornū	-ui (ū)	-ū
ACC. cāsū	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL. cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL	
NOM. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN. cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. A few words of this declension have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.
2. *Domus*, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 501.)

¹ *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. ² *mortuus est*, *died*.

223. RULE. — **Gender.** — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.*

1. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis**, *brave army* ; **tua manus**, *your hand* ; **cornū dextrum**, *right wing*.

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus, ūs, m., *a falling*, in (ā) **dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*.
chance, misfortune.

domus, ūs, f., *house, home.* in (ā) **sinistrō cornū**, *on the left wing*.
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand, band* (of men). **conveniō**, ire, **convēnī**, **con-**
ventum, *come together,*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor.* *assemble.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of army). **deus**, ī, m., *god.*



Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs militum audivit? 2. Hostēs alii aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Principis est cōsuētūdō eōs quī coniūratiōnem faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfendent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illi pūnitī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī milītēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant ei cāsum exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmīcāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

dūcō	audiō	iaciō	coepī
trādūcō	permovēō	fugiō	nūntiō
veniō	pōnō	faciō	ēripiō
conveniō	careō	interficiō	cōgō
mittō	vincō	dīcō	cōgnōscō
dēbeō	relinquō	iubeō	discēdō
cupiō	contencō	appellō	liberō
capiō	gerō	cōstituō	pūniō
prohibeō	incolō	dēfendō	mūniō

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns** and **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**,

iubeō, cōgnōscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following :

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Miles gladium habet, | } <i>the soldier has a sword.</i> |
| 2. Militi est gladius, | |

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of **est**. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE. — Dative of Possession. — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. **Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēmini.** 2. **Audiēbāris; capiēris; caperis.** 3. **Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis.** 4. **Missum erat; mīserat; coepisti.** 5. **Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis.** 6. **Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur.** 7. **Relīquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat.** 8. **Liberātae sunt; habuerās; contendebātis.** 9. **Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; monentur.** 10. **Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūniris; cōgitur.**

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus amicus domum habet. 2. Meō amicō est domus. 3. Helvētīi, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidī mox venient. 4. Exercitus magnus Caesarī fuit. 5. Caesar magnum exercitum habuit. 6. Magnam frūmentī cōpiam habent. 7. Magna frūmentī cōpia eīs est. 8. Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent. 9. Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs. 10. Militi pulchrum gladium dedit.

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234.

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*, *go*

PRIN. PARTS: *eō*, *ire*, *iī*, *itum*²

Learn all tenses of the indicative of *eō* (525).

1. Notice that the *-i-*, the present stem of *eō*, changes to *-e-* before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

² See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative *ibō* is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is *ire*. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

SINGULAR PLURAL

First Declension	-ae	-īs	{ <i>Rōmae</i> , <i>in Rome</i> . <i>Athēnīs</i> , <i>in Athens</i> .
Second Declension	-ī	-īs	{ <i>Corinthī</i> , <i>at or in Corinth</i> . <i>Delphīs</i> , <i>at or in Delphi</i> .
Third Declension	-ī(e)	-ibus	{ <i>Carthāginī</i> , <i>at or in Carthage</i> . <i>Trallibus</i> , <i>at or in Tralles</i> .

2. *Domī*, *at home*; *humī*, *on the ground*; *rūrī*, *in the country*, are also locative forms.
3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition *in* and the ablative; *i.e.*, *in urbe est*, *he is in the city*; *in Italiā sunt*, *they are in Italy*.

236. Examine the following:

1. Venit, he comes	{ <i>ad pontem</i> , <i>to the bridge</i> .
	<i>in Italiā</i> , <i>to or into Italy</i> .
	<i>Rōmam</i> , <i>to Rome</i> .
	<i>domum</i> , <i>home</i> .
	<i>rūs</i> , <i>to or into the country</i> .

2. **Exit, he goes** { (ab) (dē) **ex oppidō**, *from the town.*
 (ab) (dē) **ex Italiā**, *from Italy.*
Athēnis, *from Athens.*
domō, *from home.*
rūre, *from the country.*

a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and **domus** and **rūs**, while a preposition (**in**, **ad**, **ab**, **dē**, **ex**) is used with other words.

237. RULE. — Expressions of Place.

1. Place *Where*. Ablative with **in**.

But, Locative with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

2. Place *To which*. Accusative with **ad** or **in**.

But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

3. Place *From which*. Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

238.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae , ārum (plur.), f., <i>Athens.</i>	eō , ire, iī, itum, <i>go.</i>
Carthāgō , inis, f., <i>Carthage.</i>	exeō (ex + eō), ire, exiī , ex- itūrus, <i>go forth, leave.</i>
Corinthus , ī, f. (28, 2), <i>Cor- inth.</i>	trānseō (trāns + eō), ire, trānsiī, trānsitūrus, <i>go over, go across, cross.</i>
Delphī , ōrum (plur.), m., <i>Del- phi.</i>	impetus , ūs, m., <i>attack.</i>
equitātus (eques), ūs, m., <i>cav- alry.</i>	impetum faciō in (with acc.), <i>make an attack upon.</i>

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur. 2. Legiōnēs populī Rōmānī in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus nāvium militibus, quī in hibernīs erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium militum. 5. Propter cāsum nostrōrum hostēs laetī erant.

II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are assembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen. 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exhibātis; imus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā¹; Rōmā; domō. 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōsul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit. 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum geret. 9. Helvētiī ē finibus exīre parant, et exercitum flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province. 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from the banks by the enemy.

¹ of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (510), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus, <i>one</i>	ūna	ūnum	trēs, <i>three</i>	tria
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, trīs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	duo, <i>two</i>	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

SINGULAR

PLURAL

NOM.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	mīllia (mīlia)
GEN.	mille	mīllium (mīlium)
DAT.	mille	mīllibus (mīlibus)
ACC.	mille	mīllia (mīlia)
ABL.	mille	mīllibus (mīlibus)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls*; **septem puērōrum**, *of seven boys*.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers*.

244. Examine the following :

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Italiā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quinque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quinque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. RULE. — **Extent of Time and Space.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. , <i>height, depth.</i>	mercātor, ōris, m. , <i>merchant, trader.</i>
ēruptiō, ōnis, f. , <i>a breaking out, a sally.</i>	socius, i, m. , <i>companion, ally.</i>
incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus , <i>set fire to, burn.</i>	passus, ūs, m. , <i>pace.</i>
incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus , <i>set fire to, burn.</i>	mille passūs , <i>a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile;</i>
maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus , <i>stay, remain.</i>	millia passuum , <i>miles.</i>
	hōra, ae, f. , <i>hour.</i>

247.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Centum viginti mercātorum; mille trecentis sex et quadrāgintā militibus.** 2. **Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum.** 3. **Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est.** 4. **Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant.** 5. **Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat.** 6. **Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant.** 7. **Socii**

Helvētiōrum decem millia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria mīllia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfectī erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēvigintī altum fuit. 11. Hīc collis septuāgintā quinque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in *-ē*.

	diēs, m., <i>day</i>		rēs, f., <i>thing</i>			
	Stem diē-		Stem rē-			
	Base di-		Base r-			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi ¹	diērum	rei ¹	rērum	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

¹ In the genitive singular the case ending is *-ēi* if the base ends in a vowel, *-ēi* if the base ends in a consonant.

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. **RULE.** — **Gender.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following:

1. **Satis cibī habēmus**, *we have enough (of) food.*
 2. **Nihil novī est**, *there is nothing (of) new (newness, novelty).*
 3. **Ūnus ex militibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
 4. **Quīdam dē nostris cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibī**, **novī**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quīdam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. **RULE.** — **Genitive of the Whole** ("Partitive Genitive") — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252.

VOCABULARY

aciēs , ēī , f., <i>line of battle.</i>	nihil reliquī , <i>nothing left.</i>
diēs , ēī , m., <i>day.</i>	cōnficiō , ere, cōnfēcī , cōnfectus ,
rēs , reī , f., <i>thing, circumstance, affair.</i>	<i>accomplish, finish, wear out.</i>
nihil (indecl. noun), <i>nothing.</i>	pūblicus , a, um, <i>public.</i>
satis (indecl. noun), <i>enough.</i>	rēs pūblica , reī pūblicae , f., <i>the state, the commonwealth.</i>

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī millia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētiī cum omnibus impedimentis domum ire coāctī sunt. 5. Equitātus quīdecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Helvētiīs, quī flūmen trānsibant, pugnābat. 4. Vicōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Primā lūce paucī dē eōrum militibus iter nōn cōnfēcerant. 6. Finitimī eīs satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō periculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātis eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētiōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Primam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō.
habent.

² Express this idea in some other way than by using

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 476.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi ē finibus suis¹ exīre cōstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vicōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque⁵ domō efferre iubent.³ Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exīre cōstituunt.³ Bōiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīcī et sociī erant.

(READING SELECTION 454)

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive, comparative, superlative*.

I. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: *cārus, dear*.

¹ *their*. ² *about* (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From *tollō*. ⁵ Acc. of *quisque*.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter : **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cārior**, **cārius**, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum** : **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cāriissimus**, **a, um**, *dearest*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
lātus , a, um (lāt-), <i>wide</i>	lārior ,	lātius ,	lātissimus , a, um , <i>widest</i>
fortis , e (fort-), <i>brave</i>	fortior ,	fortius ,	fortissimus , a, um , <i>bravest</i>
vēlōx (vēlōc-), <i>swift</i>	vēlōcior ,	vēlōcius ,	vēlōcissimus , a, um , <i>swiftest</i>

257. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (62). The comparative is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	lārior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (is)	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

1. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare **altus** (**alt-**), *high, deep*; **potēns** (**potent-**), *powerful*; **brevīs** (**brev-**), *short*. Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following :

1. Hic mōns altior quam ille est, } *this mountain is higher*
2. Hic mōns altior illō est, } *than that.*
3. Montem altiōrem quam illum videō, } *I see a mountain*
4. Montem altiōrem illō videō, } *higher than that.*

Observe that in 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative, while in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. So in 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative, while in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, **vir quō nēmō fortior erat**, *a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE. — Ablative of Comparison. — *After comparatives with quam the same case is used after quam as before it. After comparatives without quam the ablative is used.*

261.

VOCABULARY

vēlōx, vēlōcis, <i>swift.</i>	lātitudō, inis, f., <i>width,</i>
tūtus, a, um, <i>safe.</i>	<i>breadth.</i>
turpis, e, <i>ugly, disgraceful,</i>	perveniō, ire, pervēni, per-
<i>infamous.</i>	ventum, <i>come up, arrive,</i>
Rhodanus, ī, m., <i>the Rhone.</i>	<i>reach.</i>
quam, adv., <i>than.</i>	obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus,
latus, ¹ lateris, n., <i>side, flank.</i>	<i>besiege.</i>

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat.
2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt.
3. Incolās quī ex oppidō exiērunt laudat.
4. Quī clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur?
5. Tempus annī bellō nōn erat idōneum.
6. Ille mōns mille pedēs altus est.

¹ Do not confuse with the adjective lātus, a, um.

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi fīnitīmīs fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multīs rēbus potentiōrēs illīs gentībūs erant. 4. Equōs vėlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vidimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vėlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vidī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissimā erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), beautiful [<i>eager</i>	pulchrior, pulchr- ius	pulcherrimus, a, um
ācer (acr-), <i>keen</i> ,	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, a, um

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i>	similior, ius	simillimus, a, um
dissimilis, e (dissimil-), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, ius	dissimilimus, a, um
facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i>	facilior, ius	facillimus, a, um
difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i>	difficilior, ius	difficillimus, a, um
gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i>	gracilior, ius	gracillimus, a, um
humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i>	humilior, ius	humillimus, a, um

266. Examine the following :

1. **Hic mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est**, *this mountain is a hundred feet higher (literally, higher by a hundred feet) than that.*
2. **Hoc iter multō facilius illō est**, *this road is much easier (literally, easier by much) than that.*

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — Measure of Difference. — *The Measure of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. *Hic mōns altissimus est, this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.*
2. *Hic mōns altior est, this mountain is rather (or too) high.*

269.

VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., <i>approach, arrival.</i>	animus, ī, m., <i>mind, courage, spirit, disposition.</i>
lēnis, e, <i>smooth, gentle.</i>	inter, prep. with acc., <i>between, among, during.</i>
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>await, wait for, expect.</i>	certiōrem eum faciō, with dē <i>and abl., I inform him (lit., I make him more certain) of.</i>
ibi, adv., <i>in that place, there.</i>	

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit. 2. Quod cōsiliū tūtius hōc est? 3. Nāvēs quibus milītēs missi erant vėlōcissimāe sunt. 4. Helvētīi finitimōs multōs annōs finibus prohibuerant. 5. Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.

II. 1. There are not enough horsemen in Rome. 2. Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul. 3. Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days. 4. Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.

271.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetum hostium exspectāre difficillimum est. 2. Rīpae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt. 3. Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est. 4. Pōns inter duo oppida factus erat. 5. Omnium urbis viārum haec multō brevissima est. 6. Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat. 8. Collis in quō Rōmāni castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quī ad vicum est. 9. Dē cāsū exercitūs

lĕgātōs certiorēs fēcīt. 10. Quī eōs certiorēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly high mountain. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um, <i>much</i>	— plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multi, ae, a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
(501)		
iuvenis, e, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
superus, a, um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus, summus, <i>highest</i>
inferus, a, um, <i>below</i>	inferior, inferius, <i>lower</i>	īfimus, īmus, <i>lowest</i>

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. **Plūs**, *more*, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

274. **Possum** (**pot(is) + sum**), *I am able, I can*.

PRIN. PARTS: **possum**, **posse**, **potui**, —

Learn all tenses of the indicative (522).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (521).

275.

VOCABULARY

fidēs , eī , f. , <i>trust, confidence.</i>	accēdō , ere , accessī , accessū-
potestās , ātis , f. (possum),	rus (with ad and the acc.),
<i>power, authority.</i>	<i>go or come near, approach.</i>
nōbilis , e , <i>well known, noble.</i>	hūc , adv. , <i>to this place, hither.</i>
amplus , a , um , <i>large, extensive, ample.</i>	quam maximus , <i>the greatest possible, as large as possible</i> (with superlatives
permittō , ere , permīsī , permis-	quam has the force "as possible").
sus , <i>give up, intrust, permit.</i>	

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficilīus iter facere cōēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōnsiliis certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostris ad flūmen lātissimum pervēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdimus lātior mīlle passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accedere ad vicum, quī summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem² et potestātem populī Rōmānī illae nātiōnēs permīsērunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Helvētīi ob flūmina maxima trānsīre in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annīs maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ *on the highest part of, on the top of.* Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as **īmus**, the lowest part of, the bottom of; **medius**, the middle of; **extrēmus**, the end of.

² *keeping, protection.*

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings :

turpis	pessimus	ācrior	minimus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplus	vēlōx	similis	plūrēs
nōbilis	vetustior	maior	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding -ē to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miser-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i>

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding -ter to the stem. Stems ending in -nt drop -t.

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
fortis, <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdent-	prūdentē, <i>wisely</i>

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb :

primus, <i>first</i>	prīmō, <i>at first</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile, <i>easily</i>

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
ācer	ācriter, <i>eagerly</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
multus	multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: turpis, amplius, nōbilis, pessimus, vėlōx, plūrēs.

281.

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i>	agmen, agminis, n. (agō), <i>army (on the march), column; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i>
instruō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i>	
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i>	proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next (163).</i>
plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i>	apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with, near.</i>
	quārtus, a, um, <i>fourth.</i>

282.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur.
3. Helvētīi multō ācrius quam finitimī cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum exspectāvit.
5. Vīcus ad quem primum agmen pervēnerat

proximus erat finibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat milītēs bene ēgērunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, ācerimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostris occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorigis filiam et ūnum ē filiis nostrī cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī socii apud finitimōs ob amicitiam populī Rōmānī plūrimum possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there² on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long³ marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.⁴ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ *when*.² *eō* (adv.).³ *magnus*.⁴ See 147, 3.*Agmen*

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

 THE TWO ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETII COULD
LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duobus itineribus Helvētīi domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Unum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētīōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētīōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētīōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētīi comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (511): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **sui**, *of himself, herself, itself*.

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

- I. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is**, **ea**, **id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.
 - a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*. ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)
 - b. **Egō tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you*. (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. ² *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation,
 "It is I who am calling you.")

c. **Ego eum laudō** ; **is mē culpāt**, *I praise him ; he blames me.*

It will be recalled that in the exercises of the preceding lessons the subjects of the verbs, when pronouns, were not expressed. Why is it impossible to omit the personal pronouns as subjects in English as often as in Latin?

286. USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.

S. 1. I praise <i>myself</i>	PL. We praise <i>ourselves</i>
2. You praise <i>yourself</i>	You praise <i>yourselves</i>
3. { He praises <i>himself</i> }	They praise <i>themselves</i>
{ She praises <i>herself</i> }	

2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, **ego** and **tū** (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, **suī**, of *himself, herself, itself*.

S. 1. mē laudō , <i>I praise myself</i>	PL. nōs laudāmus , <i>we praise ourselves</i>
2. tē laudās , <i>you praise yourself</i>	vōs laudātis , <i>you praise yourselves</i>
3. sē laudat , <i>he praises himself</i>	sē laudant , <i>they praise themselves</i>

3. Review 190. Do not confuse **is** with **suī**. **Suī** regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands.

- a. **Vir sē videt**, *the man sees himself*.
- b. **Vir eum videt**, *the man sees him* (some one else).
4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse **ipse** with **sē**. **Ipse** is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.
 - a. **Vir ipse eum vidit**, *the man himself saw him, or the man saw him himself*.
 - b. **Vir sē vidit**, *the man saw himself*.
 - c. **Virum ipsum vidimus**, *we saw the man himself*.

287. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them; **tēcum**, instead of **cum tē**; **nōbiscum**, instead of **cum nōbīs**. So also **quibuscum**, *with whom*, instead of **cum quibus**.

288. Examine the following :

1. **Ego, quī haec faciō, tuus pater sum**, *I, who do this, am your father*.
2. **Vōs, quī haec facitis, mei amicī estis**, *you, who do this, are my friends*.

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus , <i>give up, surrender.</i>	commeātus, ūs, m. , <i>provisions, supplies.</i>
committō, ere, commisi, commissus , <i>intrust, commit</i> ;	spēs, eī, f. , <i>hope.</i>
proelium committō , <i>begin battle.</i>	sine , prep. with abl., <i>without.</i>
	ante , adv., and prep. with acc., <i>before.</i>
recipiō, ere, recēpi, receptus , <i>take back, receive</i> ;	postea , adv., <i>afterwards.</i>
sē recipere, retreat, betake one's self.	autem , conj. (never the first word), <i>but, however.</i>

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. mē recipiō , <i>I retreat</i> | nōs recipimus , <i>we retreat</i> |
| 2. tē recipis , <i>you retreat</i> | vōs recipitis , <i>you retreat</i> |
| 3. sē recipit , <i>he retreats</i> | sē recipiunt , <i>they retreat</i> |

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis rei pūblicaē spēs in mīlitum virtūte posita¹ est. 2. Brevi tempore quattuor ē prīncipibus Rōmam mittentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostris summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbis miserrimī erimus. 2. Ego sum miles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Gallī ad eōrum fīnēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnēs ad² sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ibit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	meus, ¹ a, um, <i>my,</i> <i>mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
2D PER.	tuus, a, um, <i>your,</i> <i>yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
3D PER.	suus, a, um, <i>his (own),</i> <i>her(own), its(own)</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their (own),</i> <i>their</i>

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.

- a. **Suum patrem puella vidit,** *the girl saw her father.*
- b. **Vestrum amicum vidimus,** *we saw your (plur.) friend.*
- c. **Tuās filiās vidit,** *he saw your (sing.) daughters.*

2. **Suus, a, um,** is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is, eius, his, her, its ; eōrum, their ; eārum, their** (referring to feminine).

- a. **Agricola suum equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
- b. **Agricola eius equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
- c. **Agricola eōrum equōs laudat,** *the farmer praises their horses.*
- d. **Agricolae suōs equōs laudant,** *the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is **mī**.

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit**, *he sent the third line as a relief* (literally, *for a relief*) *to our men*.

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsuī** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service* or *purpose*.

295. RULE. — **Dative of Service or Purpose.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.*

296.

SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	ego	meī ¹	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i> noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, a, um, <i>his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own</i> (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id.

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?

297.

VOCABULARY

redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus,
go back, return.

dīmittō, ere, dīmisi, dīmissus,
send off, dismiss, let go.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus,
give back, return, render.

sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus-
tentus, *hold up, withstand,*
sustain.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor.*

tamen, adv., *yet, however,*
nevertheless.

itaque, conj., *and so, there-*
fore.

inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, advantage,*
benefit.

298.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Postea in silvās sēsē recēpērunt. 3. Nōs dē proeliō certiōrēs faciet. 4. Caesar eōs sibi arma dēdere cōgit. 5. Militēs sē laudābant, eōs autem culpābant. 6. Nōbīs Rōmae satis cibī est.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitātum auxiliō suis mīsit. 2. Tuī amīcī tibi, mei mihi sunt cārissimī. 3. Labiēnus ūnum latus castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Haec rēs nostrīs magnō ūsuī erat. 5. Impetum sustinēre nōn poterant; itaque in suōs finēs rediērunt. 6. Hostēs Caesarī sē sua- que omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitudinem flūmen trānsire Helvētiī nōn potuērunt. 8. Caesar eius militēs dīmisit, suōs autem in castrīs tenuit. 9. Cōsul in finēs Helvētiōrum quam maximīs itineribus contendere cō- stituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum exspectāre iussit

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to return all his possessions¹ to him. 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 515):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	qua	quid (quod), <i>somebody, anybody</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod), <i>some one</i>
quisquam		quicquam, <i>any one</i> (at all) (no plur.)
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, quiddam, <i>a certain one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque, <i>each one, every one</i>

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. Quisquam and quisque are declined like quis.
3. In the neuter the quid-forms are used as pronouns, the quod-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. Quis, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after sī, nisi, nē, num: sī quid his accidit, *if anything happens to them*.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this*.
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other, some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dixit**, *some one (I do not know who) told you this*.
5. **Quidam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quidam haec mihi dixit**, *some one (I know who, but I will not tell) told me this*.

302. Examine the following:

1. **Vir summae virtutis fuit**, } *he was a man of very great*
2. **Vir summā virtute fuit**, } *courage.*

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtutis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtute** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtutis** and **virtute**.

303. RULE. — **Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, if itself modified by an adjective or genitive, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.*

304.

VOCABULARY

diligentia, ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence, industry.</i>	aliēnus, a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i>
grātia, ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i>	reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus, <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i>
plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>the common people.</i>	sī, conj., <i>if.</i>
	nisi, conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i>

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesarī dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātūī magnō ūsuī fuit. 3. Legiōnī satis cibī nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Gallī sē suaque omnia Rōmānis dēdidērunt, quod magnitūdine eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. When he returned to Rome, he saw his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exire iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiam laudat, laetus est. 3. Quīdam ex Gallīs multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novī² repperit? 6. Liberī quīque³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Prīnceps propter dīligentiam magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī aliēnō in locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Finitimī nostri bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good² about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ ad. ² See 250, 2. ³ quīque (quī + que) = et iī quī. ⁴ bonō animō, *well disposed*.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns ¹	wanting
FUTURE	participial stem + ūrus	Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (504); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ **iō** verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns**, **audiendus**.

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as (while) he is doing it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent to* (*not yet done at*) the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give*; **videō**, *see*; **faciō**, *make, do*; **mūniō**, *fortify*; **eō**, *go*. (525.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses:

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them as (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul, etc.*).
4. **Gallī his rēbus permōti obsidēs misērunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages (literally, the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.).

5. **Orgetorix damnātus interficiētur**, if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed (literally, Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed).
6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat**, although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time (literally, having been wounded, he fought).
7. **Multōs vicōs captōs incendit**, he captured and burned many villages (literally, he burned many captured villages).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach*.
vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, earth-works*.

posterus, a, um, *next, following*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.

permovere, ēre, **permōvi**, **permōtus**, *influence, arouse*.

circumveniō, īre, **circumvenī**, **circumventus**, *come around, surround*.

ēducō, ere, **ēdūxī**, **ēductus**, *lead out*.

laccēsō, ere, **laccēsivī**, **laccēsitus**, *attack, harass*.

Sēquani, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sequani* (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Hic grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.
2. Gallī cōsiliū cēpērunt quod Rōmānis nōn grātum erat.
3. Si quid reperitur, Caesarī semper nūntiātur.
4. Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat.
5. Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dicuntur.

II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors has come. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

314.

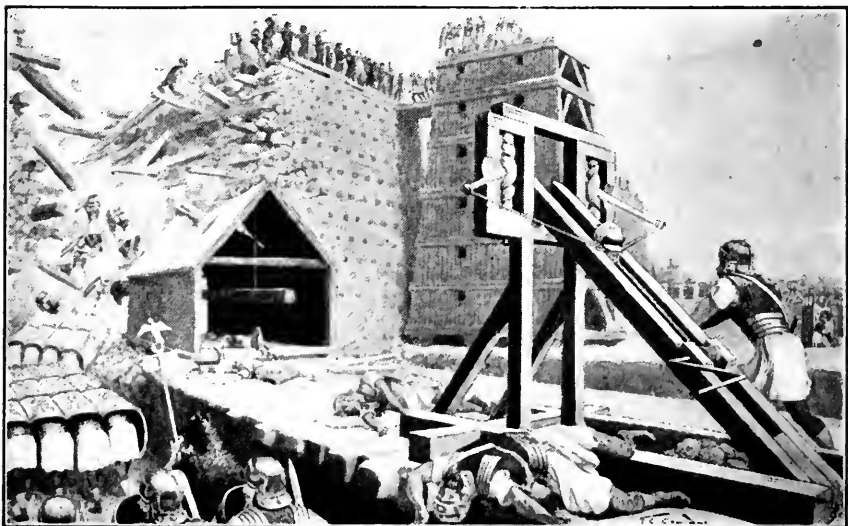
EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīs rēbus permōtī Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lēgātōs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī mūnientēs hostēs lacescent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnitam obsidēre cōstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacessitus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castrīs ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Principēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcērant certior factus est. 10. Lēgātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed¹ of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured² their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing³ the river. 4. If you are defeated,⁴ you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Although we have been surrounded,⁵ we will fight bravely.

¹ 311, 3. ² 311, 7. ³ 311, 2. ⁴ 311, 5. ⁵ 311, 6.

(READING SELECTION 457)



A Siege

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples :

- | | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|---|
| <p>1. Caesar, Germānīs
victīs, in hī-
berna vēnit,</p> | } | <p><i>after the Germans had
been conquered,
when he had conquered
the Germans,
after conquering the
Germans,
having conquered the
Germans,
now that the Germans
had been conquered,
the Germans having
been conquered,</i></p> | } | <p><i>Caesar went
into winter
quarters.</i></p> |
| <p>2. Oppidō expugnātō,
hostēs vincent,</p> | } | <p><i>if the town is captured,
by capturing the town,
since the town has been
captured,
the town having been
captured,</i></p> | } | <p><i>they will con-
quer the
enemy.</i></p> |
| <p>3. Nōbīs castra mū-
nientibus, Galli
pervēnērunt,</p> | } | <p><i>while we were fortify-
ing the camp,
as we were fortifying
the camp,</i></p> | } | <p><i>the Gauls ar-
rived.</i></p> |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis, oppidō expugnātō, nōbis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Gallī victī domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victī** agree with **Gallī**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

Duce Caesare Rōmānī semper vincēbant,	{	<i>lit. Caesar (being) leader,</i> <i>under the leadership of Caesar,</i> <i>if Caesar was their leader,</i> <i>when Caesar was their leader,</i>	<i>the Romans</i> <i>always used</i> <i>to conquer.</i>
--	---	--	---

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit**.

318.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

signum, i, n., *sign, ensign, standard* (of the legion).

quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, remove, take away.*

redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*

obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus, *possess, obtain, retain.*

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus, *turn about, change.*

signa convertō, *face about* (literally, *turn the standards about*).

occidō, ere, occidī, occisus, *cut down, kill, slay.*

inquam, inquit, def., *say.*

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostrīs diū lacessītis mīsit.
2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōsul lēgātum sēcum redire Rōmam iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacessēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hiberna redūxit. 3. Hīs Caesarī nūntiātīs, quam primum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suīs¹ ā Gallīs permōtīs¹ Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostium exspectāre est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, signīs conversīs, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redire coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omnī spē victōriae sublātā, Helvētīi cum mulieribus liberisque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Galli mūnierant ā Rōmānis incēsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,¹ Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When their leader had been killed, the Gauls surrendered to Caesar. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. If our villages are burned, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE
HELVETII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. Hīs rēbus nūntiātīs Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exire atque quam maximīs itineribus ad Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.² Quā³ rē prōvinciam tōtam praebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

¹ = *this battle having been made.* ² *but (only) one.* ³ *Quā rē, therefore.*

eius adventū Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Quī¹ lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antiquīs Helvētīi cōsulem Cassium occiderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimicō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final e of present infinitive to i , except in third conjugation, which changes final ere to i .
FUTURE	Future active participle and esse .	Supine in -um (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and iri .
PERFECT	Perfect stem + isse .	Perfect passive participle and esse .

¹ The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a personal pronoun or a demonstrative with or without *and*; hence *Quī lēgātī* = *these ambassadors*.

² See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, bind.

iubeō, order.

relinquō, leave.

sum, I am (521).

iaciō, throw.

appellō, name, call.

vincō, conquer.

eō, go (525).

324.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, f., reputation, influence, authority.

littera, ae, f., letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document.

rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, supplies of grain, provisions.

cottidiānus, a, um, daily.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall, perish, die.

at, conj., but.

numquam, adv., never.

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī cōsulem cōpiās instruentem lacessivērunt. 2. Rōmānī, sīgnīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helvētiī coniūratiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī finitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostrī autem multās mulierēs captās domum misērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy? 2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After a few had been slain, the army was led back to camp. 4. And so hope was taken away from the Gauls.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Instruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capī; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; mīsisse; redūci. 5. Paucae dē filiābus occisae esse dicuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Gallī ā finitimīs cottidiānīs proeliīs lacessītī ex suis finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās literās scripsisse dicēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portārī nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostrīs cecidisse in hōc proeliō dicuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

(READING SELECTION 458)

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venīs, *you are coming.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit tē venīre, *he says that you are coming, or he says you are coming.*

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE. — Indirect Discourse. — *Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.*

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by (before) that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed:

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō, <i>I am coming</i>	PRESENT videt mē venīre, <i>he sees that I am coming</i>
		PAST vidit mē venīre, <i>he saw that I was coming</i>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam, <i>I was coming</i>	PRESENT audit mē vēnisse, <i>he hears that I came, or have come</i>
PERFECT	vēnī, <i>I have come, I came</i>	PAST audivit mē vēnisse, <i>he heard that I came, or had come</i>
PLUPERFECT	vēneram, <i>I had come</i>	
FUTURE	veniam, <i>I shall come</i>	PRESENT spērat mē ventūrum (esse), <i>he hopes that I shall come</i>
		PAST spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse), <i>he hoped that I should come</i>

CAUTION.—The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

331.

VOCABULARY

existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think, believe, suppose.</i>	trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, <i>give up, surrender, deliver.</i>
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>point out, show, mention.</i>	cōspectus, ūs, m., <i>sight, view.</i>
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>hope.</i>	
respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsum, <i>answer, reply.</i>	complūrēs, a (ia), <i>a great many, very many.</i>
sciō, scire, scivī, scitus, <i>know, know how</i>	

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dīxit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōspectū suī¹ imperātōris pugnāvisse mīles exīstimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūntiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs scīmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suis "Quis scit" inquit "hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūntiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā finitimīs nostrīs diū lacessimur."

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. I hope many have not fallen. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc.

² Do not use *maximus*. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH *ūtor*, *fruor*, ETC.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows :

	PRESENT IND.	PRESENT INF.	PERFECT IND.
1ST CONJ.	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, <i>I urge, encourage</i>
2D CONJ.	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, <i>I fear</i>
3D CONJ.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum, <i>I follow</i>
4TH CONJ.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum, <i>I get possession of</i>

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (528.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortātus militēs proelium commisit, *after encouraging* (literally, *having encouraged*) *his soldiers, he began the battle.*

336. Examine the following :

1. *Equīs ūtuntur*, *they use horses.*
2. *Vītā fruītur*, *he enjoys life.*

Observe that *equīs* and *vītā* are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — Ablative with Certain Verbs. — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use, employ.</i>	proficiscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>	arbitror, āri, ātus sum, <i>think, suppose.</i>
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, <i>encourage, exhort.</i>	pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, <i>expel, drive away, rout.</i>
potior, potīri, potītus sum, <i>get possession of.</i>	praesidium, ī, n., <i>defense, guard, garrison.</i>
fossa, ae, f., <i>ditch, trench.</i>	

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliā itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coācti sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficīscētur; proficīscitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dixit. 4. Cōsul Rōmā profectus in finēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvīs equīs dīcuntur. 6. Cōsul,

exercitū pulsō, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbitrābantur. 9. Hostēs potirī castrīs nōn posse dux vīdit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs prae-sidiō castrīs Labiēnus relīquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set¹ out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of **ferō** (527) and **fiō** (526).

1. Review the conjugation of **faciō** (177-179), and note that **fiō** is used as the passive of **faciō**.

342. Examine the following :

1. **Nōbīs persuādent**, *they persuade us*.
2. **Imperātōrī pāret**, *he obeys the commander*.

Observe that **nōbīs** and **imperātōrī** are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE.—Dative with Verbs. — *Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹Use a participle.

344.

VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, <i>bear, carry.</i>	fiō, fieri, factus sum, <i>become, be made.</i>
cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus, <i>bring together, gather.</i>	persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (w. dat.), <i>persuade.</i>
nēmō, dat. nēminī (no gen. or abl.), <i>no one, nobody.</i>	pāreō, ēre, pārui, — (w. dat.), <i>obey.</i>
moror, āri, ātus sum, <i>delay, hinder.</i> [<i>resist, oppose.</i>	noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (w. dat.), <i>harm, injure.</i>
resistō, ere, restitī, — (w. dat.),	crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum (w. dat.), <i>believe, trust.</i>

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostrī equitātum Gallōrum tria mīllia passuum secūtī pepulērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vicō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnitā potitur. 4. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortātī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castrīs ēductōs īnstruī iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentis in ūnum locum conlātis, nostrī aciem instrūxērunt. 2. Pārere suō quisque imperātōrī dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Id² persuādere eīs numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō eī haec dīcentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

¹ Use the ablative absolute. ² Id is the direct object of **persuādere**. Translate: *of this*.

incolae nostris fortiter resistēbant. 7. Boni libri nēminī nocent. 8. Caesar litteris Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās (*Belgians*) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facere. 9. Quārē (*therefore*) Caesar ad eōs proficīscī cōstituit. 10. Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar ; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

(READING SELECTION 459)

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant mūrum pedēs sēdecim altum et fossam ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō et castellis mūnītis, facile eōs prohibēre potest. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum rediērunt, negat² sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Helvētiī autem, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, perrumpere cōnātī³ operis mūnitiōne⁴ et mīlitum tēlis repulsī sunt.

¹ See 272, *senex*. ² *negat sē posse*, says *he cannot* (literally, *denies that he can*). ³ From *cōnor*, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb *mūniō*?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES
OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **fiō** (526).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE				
CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
PASSIVE	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
 - a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.
 - b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. RULE. — Subjunctive of Purpose. — *Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with ut if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with nē if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of :

cōficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficīscor	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	redūcō	sciō	tollō	scribō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	laccessō	pellō	īnstruō	fiō

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in ūnum locum convocātis, Gallī impetum nostrōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, Gallī eis restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum quemque cibum portāre iubet. 4. Orgetorigis filia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fiēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis ūtī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad primum agmen proficiscitur ut suōs cohortētur. 2. Nostrī, signīs conversīs, pellere Gallōs coepērunt. 3. Lēgātum in Galliam proficiscī iubet nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redīmus domum nē ab hostibus occidāmur. 6. Gallī magnās cōpiās ūnum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litterās paucās scribās? 8. Lēgātī in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuādeant. 9. Nōs sequiminī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallōs accēdere ut obsidēs redant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the 'personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem amārer

mūnīrem mūnīrer

monērem monērer

1. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted (so) that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so*, *such*, *in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

1. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint**, *the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.*

2. Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Galli trānsire nōn possent,
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
3. Nostrī tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē reciperent,
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
4. Tam graviter vulnerāti erant ut pugnāre nōn possent, *they had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.*
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with **ut** express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
- b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.
- c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b*, *c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE. — Subjunctive of Result. — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with ut if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with ut nōn if the result clause is negative.*

359.

VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecū-	dēditīō, ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i>
tus sum, <i>pursue, overtake.</i>	calamitās, ātis, f., <i>disaster,</i>
prōgredior, prōgredi, prō-	<i>defeat.</i>
gressus sum, <i>advance, pro-</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great, such.</i>
<i>ceed.</i>	tam, adv., <i>so</i> (with adjectives
audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, <i>dare.</i>	and adverbs).
accipiō, ere, accēpi, acceptus,	ita, adv., <i>thus, so.</i>
<i>receive.</i>	timor, ōris, m., <i>fear.</i>
castellum, ī, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i>	

¹ A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trāseunt ut eōrum finēs vāstent. 2. Vicīs multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castrīs potirī posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castrīs profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trāseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientis cōsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnītur ut expugnārī nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsire Rhodanum ausi sunt tēlis et sagittīs vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitūdine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellis mūnita est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellis ita mūnita est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum finēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitatēs in dēditionem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenire possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

(READING SELECTION 460)

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam ācriter pugnābant ut Helvētiī aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditionē certior factus legiōnēs in hiberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābātur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nolumus. 2. Māvīs; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor mīlitēs praemīsīt quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redīre mālēbant. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent praemīserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīxērunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemīsīt.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, **dīxērunt**, differs from that of the subjunctive, **dicerent**.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **possum** (522); of **fiō** (526); of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (524).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **-erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō quis veniat,
I know who is coming.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Sciō eum venire,
I know (that) he is coming.

370. RULE. — **Indirect Question.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare :

He *comes* that I *may* see him.
He *came* that I *might* see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows :

<p>Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.</p>	{	<p>Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, some- times, when it means <i>have</i>, Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive.</p>
--	---	--

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	{ Imperfect Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Pluperfect Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, Pluperfect Subjunctive.
--	---

373. Examine the following :

- | | | | | |
|----|---|--|---|---|
| 1. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid faciam, <i>what I am doing.</i> |
| 2. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid fēcerim, <i>what I have done (or did).</i> |
| 3. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid facerem, <i>what I was doing.</i> |
| 4. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid fēcissem, <i>what I had done (or did).</i> |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE. — **Sequence of Tenses.** — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have, has, . . .*, is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōces-	explōrātor, ōris, m., scout.
sum, go forward, advance.	in reliquum tempus, for the
cōnor, āri, ātus sum, try,	future.
attempt.	inter sē dare, to exchange,
conloquor, conloquī, conlocū-	give each other.
tus sum, speak together,	in flūmine pontem faciō,
confer.	build a bridge across the
in animō habeo, } I have in	river.
mihi est in } mind, in-	rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, ask, beg.
animō, } tend.	teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, hold.

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātore ē proeliō discēdere audēbit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex castrīs ēductās instruī iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 5. Ubi¹ ire mēcum māvis?

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar hastens to the river.

377.

EXERCISES

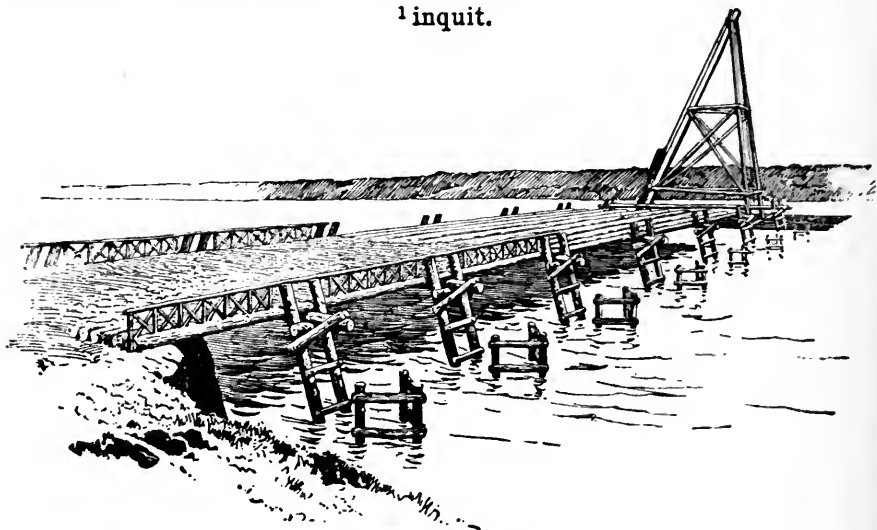
I. 1. Helvētiīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Prīncipēs ut dē dēditione conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent. 5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant. 6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dixerunt quae sibi in animō in reliquum tempus facere esset. 7. Germāni Caesarem rogāverunt

¹ When.

"Cūr in nostrōs finēs prōcessistī?" 8. Germāni Caesarem rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis multis castellis mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent. 10. In animō habēmus obsidēs inter nōs dare.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,¹ "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

¹inquit.



Pōns in flūmine

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is one that is used as a noun. Its use as subject or object of a verb is most common. In the following English examples the substantive clauses are italicized :

- | | |
|--|---|
| I know <i>what he has done.</i> | (As object.) |
| I know (<i>that</i>) <i>he has come.</i> | (As object.) |
| It happened <i>that he was present.</i> | { (As subject, or in appo-
sition with subject.) |
| He persuaded us <i>to leave the city.</i> | (As object.) |
| We feared <i>that he might die.</i> | (As object.) |
| I do not doubt <i>that he will go.</i> | (As object.) |
| He ordered us <i>to leave the city.</i> | (As object.) |

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree*. As an infinitive phrase is used in English as the object of such verbs, while **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive is used in Latin, this difference in usage must be carefully noted.

EXAMPLES

- Helvētiis persuāsit ut exirent,** *he persuaded the Helvetii to leave.*
- Suis imperat nē id faciant,** *he orders his men not to do this.*
- Militēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant,** *he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.*
- Tē rogō ut mihi crēdās,** *I ask you to believe me.*

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *persuade*.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *order, command*.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *order, command*.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask, beg*.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand, ask*.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, *advise, warn*.

petō, ere, petīvī (ii), petītus, *ask, request*.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *inquire, ask*.

cohortor (and hortor), āri, ātus sum, *encourage, urge*.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissum, *permit, allow*.

concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum, *permit, allow*.

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, *order, command*.

vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, *forbid*.

2. The following are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) ut or nē and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, allow*.

cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, *determine*.

cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupītus, *desire*.

volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, volui, *wish*.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Sciō quid tibi sit in animō. 2. Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūtī domum rediērunt. 3. Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent. 4. Helvētiī respondērunt sēsē exire ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs. 5. Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?

- II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.
 2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
 3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
 4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suis imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiis superātis, bellum gerere cum Germānis cōstituit. 4. Dumnorīx Sēquanīs persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētīi finitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem in reliquum tempus facerent. 8. Gallī nōn permittunt ut quisquam vinō ūtātur. 9. Ubi Caesar in Gallōrum finēs pervēnit, suōs vāstāre agrōs vetuit. 10. Nostri magnum Gallōrum fugientium numerum occidērunt.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him² what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

(READING SELECTION 461)

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītis propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ his ipsī Helvētīi persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

¹ imperō. ² Use the accusative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trāseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum**
TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. Timeō nē hoc faciat, *I fear that he will do this (or I fear that he is doing this).*
2. Timēbam ut hoc faceret, *I feared that he would not do this.*

Observe

- a. That the clauses nē hoc faciat and ut hoc faceret are the object of the main verb.
- b. That we translate the nē clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the ut clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

385. RULE. — Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing. — *The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following :

1. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, *when Caesar came into Gaul.*
2. Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, *when Caesar was in Gaul.*
3. Cum Caesari id nūntiātum esset, *when this had been reported to Caesar.*

¹ eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor*; ablative absolute). ² Do not confuse this verb with imperō.

4. **Cum** his persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt, *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. **Cum** primī ōrdinēs concidissent, reliquī tamen resistēbant, *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time, but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = **quō tempore**). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum causal**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum concessive**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. RULE. — **Cum** clauses. — 1. In a **cum** clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.

2. In a **cum** clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.

388.

VOCABULARY

vereor, ēri, veritus sum, <i>fear, respect.</i>	signa inferō, <i>charge (literally, bear the standards against).</i>
timeō, ēre, timuī, —, <i>fear, be afraid of.</i>	in fidem venīre, <i>to put one's self under the protection.</i>
intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus, <i>learn, know, perceive.</i>	postquam, conj., <i>after.</i>
	polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i>

380.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiīs nē iter per prōvinciam faciant mandat. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quaesivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētiī finitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsīs, sēcum exīrent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostrī impetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcerimus, tamen ā nostrīs amīcīs nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impeditōs lacerarent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Gallī sē recipere cōstituērunt. 5. Helvētiī superātī in Caesaris fidem venīre volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellexeret, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hōc factō, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Gallī pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs sīgna conversa īferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use iubeō. ² Although . . . resisted. Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming.
6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in
Rome has arrived. 8. Since the enemy have fled, we will
return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is often compounded with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prōd**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (523).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum**:

absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, —, *be away, be absent*.

adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, —, *be present, aid*.

dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfuī**, —, *be lacking, fail*.

obsum, **obesse**, **obfuī**, —, *be against, injure*.

praesum, **praeesse**, **praefuī**, —, *be at the head of, command*.

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, —, *be of use to, benefit*.

393. Examine the following:

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town*.
2. **Amicis prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends*.
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat** (**ad** + **propinquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy*.
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money, or he prefers honor to money*.

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE. — Dative with Compound Verbs. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum	vīs (no gen. or dat. sing.),
(w. dat.), <i>approach, draw</i>	vim, vī, (501) f., plur.,
<i>near.</i>	virēs, ium, ibus, <i>strength,</i>
bellum inferō, inferre, intuli,	<i>power; (plur.), strength.</i>
inlātus, and dative, <i>make</i>	iterum, adv., <i>again, a second</i>
<i>war upon.</i>	<i>time.</i>

396.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellexit. 4. Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium fīnibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance. 2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing. 3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide. 4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum fīnibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod virēs deerant. 3. Germānī dixerunt

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amīcīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs liberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlis interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeesset reliquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ab hostium fīnibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus mīllibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

(READING SELECTION 462)

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398.

FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amā, <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre, <i>be loved</i>	amāminī
monē, <i>advise</i>	monēte	monēre, <i>be advised</i>	monēminī
mitte, <i>send</i>	mittite	mittere, <i>be sent</i>	mittiminī
cape, <i>take</i>	capite	capere, <i>be taken</i>	capiminī
audi, <i>hear</i>	audīte	audīre, <i>be heard</i>	audīminī

¹ more.

² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re* and the *second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dicō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* are *dic, dūc, fac, fer*.

Give the imperative forms in the second person of *gerō, videō, dīcō, mūniō, accipiō, sequor, laudō*.

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

AFFIRMATIVE

NEGATIVE

1ST PER.	<i>laudem, let me praise</i>	<i>nē laudem, let me not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudā, praise</i>	<i>nōlī laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudet, let him praise</i>	<i>nē laudet, let him not praise</i>
1ST PER.	<i>laudēmus let us praise</i>	<i>nē laudēmus, let us not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudāte, praise</i>	<i>nōlīte laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudent, let them praise</i>	<i>nē laudent, let them not praise</i>

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative; instead *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (pres. imperative of *nōlō, be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, prae-
fectus, *set over, put in*
charge of.

referō, referre, rettulī, relā-
tus, *carry back*; referre
pedem, *retreat.*

ad multam noctem, *till late*
at night.

longē, adv., *far, far off.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus*,
chief of the Germans.

revertor, revertī, reverti, re-
versus,¹ dep., *turn back,*
return.

animadvertō, ere, animad-
vertī, animadversus (ani-
mus + ad + vertō), *turn*
the mind to, notice.

adversus, a, um, *opposite,*
facing, hostile; adversō
colle, *up the hill.*

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest.
2. Hostium ducēs cōnātī sunt castellum, cui praeerat
lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dīxit nōn sēsē Gallīs
sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex
Caesaris lēgātis, oppidō appropinquāre contendit. 5. Cum
proeli finem nox fēcisset, virī summā grātiā apud suōs ad
Caesarem vērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the
other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The
man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of
the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī respondērunt, "Nōlīte Rōmānīs bellum in-
ferre." 2. Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter
pugnēmus² nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, has
only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. ² Notice that the
subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē reverti iussit. 5. Cum virēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Signa inferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbī captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contendissent, nēmō ab hostibus occīsus est. 9. Ariovistus Caesarī “Cūr” inquit “in meōs finēs venīs?” 10. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē Caesar cōstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Carefully distinguish the difference in English between a verbal noun and a verbal adjective. They both end in *-ing*, the verbal noun being used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of “is.”)

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a verbal noun. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (516-520). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

NOM.	{	Vidēre est crēdere , <i>seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject).
GEN.	{	Ars vivendī (gerund), <i>the art of living</i> . Vēnit amīcōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends)</i> .
DAT. ¹	{	Vix his rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for managing these things</i> .
ACC.	{	Vēnit ad pugnandum (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting)</i> . Vēnit ad amīcōs videndōs (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends)</i> .
ABL.	{	Mēns discendō alitur (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning</i> . Conlocūtī sunt dē cōnsiliīs faciendīs (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans</i> .

Observe

- I. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; *ad* and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used when there is an object.
3. That purpose may be expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by *causā* following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniciēci, coniectus,	causa, ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i> ;
<i>throw, hurl.</i>	abl., <i>for-the-sake-of, in-</i>
dēligō, ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus,	<i>order-to</i> (after a genitive).
<i>select, choose. [opportunity.</i>	cupidus, a, um, <i>desirous (of),</i>
spatium, i, n., <i>space, time,</i>	<i>eager (for)</i> (with genitive).
discō, ere, didici, —, <i>learn.</i>	dēnique, adv., <i>finally, at last.</i>
turris, is, f., <i>tower.</i>	iam, adv., <i>now, already, soon.</i>

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropinquantibus, castris lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallis superatis, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropinquāre moenibus viderunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt. 5. Dic nōbīs quōs Rōmae viderīs.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Militēs finem pugnandī fēcērunt. 3. Militēs cupidī potiendī oppidī erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficillimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castris dēlēgit. 7. Lēgāti ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 8. Com-

plūrēs prīncipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās annum satis esse Helvētīi arbitrābantur. 10. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs inferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropinquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
intellegō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertor	cōnsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praefficiō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) **tollō** in the first person singular, and of (2) **cōnor** in the third person plural.

¹ for defending: genitive case.

² to fortify: express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

TENSE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. { Act. Pass.					
Imperf. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Pass.					
Perf. { Act. Pass.					
Plup. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Perf. Pass.					

(READING SELECTION 463)

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

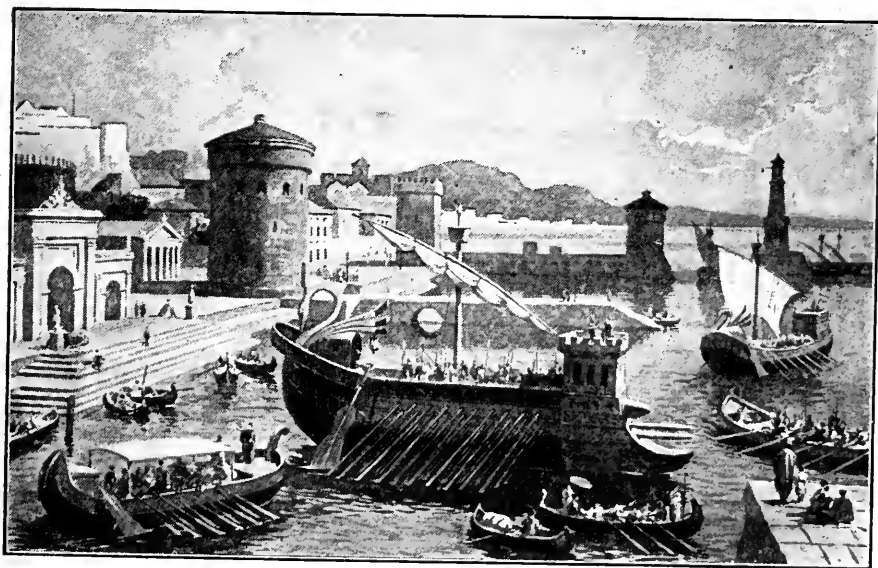
CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETH

412. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse finitimōs. Ob eās rēs eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hie-mābant,¹ ex hibernīs ēducit et cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē² septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from *hiems*? ² Why ablative?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using "if," "if not," "unless," by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415.

SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. *Si hoc faciunt, bene est, if they are doing this, it is well.*
 2. *Si hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit, if they did this, it was well.*
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; it *merely makes a supposition.*
 - b. That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416.

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. *Si hoc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.*
 2. *Si hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.*
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is not now well, the second sentence that it was not well.
 - b. That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. Sī meus amīcus Rōmae est, laetus sum. 2. Sī Helvētīi ācrius Rōmānīs restitissent, nōn victī essent. 3. Sī adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus. 4. Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit. 5. Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem instrūxisset. 6. Plūrēs Gallī occīsī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent. 7. Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proelī committendī sīgnum?

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Sī hoc facient, bene erit, *if they do this (i.e. shall do this), it will be well.*

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.
- c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

- z. That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Sī hoc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.
- c. That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
 - a. Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
 - b. Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future¹ indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present¹ subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of *sī* or *nisi*. For example :

¹ For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Principēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur, *the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered* (literally, *having been conquered*), *will be sent to Rome.*

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sī equitēs cōsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occident. 2. Sī equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terēbimur. 4. Helvētīi flūmen Rhodanum trānsissent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Sī hostēs flūmen trāseant, nostrī nōn cōsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the town has been well fortified?

(READING SELECTION 464)

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

O that my friend were here!	} referring to present time, and implying that he is not here
I wish (that) my friend were here!	
Would that my friend were here!	

O that my friend had been here!	} referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.
I wish (that) my friend had been here!	
Would that my friend had been here!	

424. Examine the following:

1. (**Utinam**) **meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come!* (a wish about the future).
 2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here!* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
 3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here!* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).
- a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
 - b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.
 - c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — Subjunctive in Wishes. — *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**; wishes hopeless in present time by **utinam** with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by **utinam** with the pluperfect subjunctive.*

426.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Utinam nē Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcissent!* 2. *Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat!* 3. *Utinam hoc facerent!* 4. *Helvētīi “Utinam” inquit*¹ *“nē altissimīs montibus continērēmur!”* 5. *Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent!* 6. *Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!*

II. 1. May he always obey the general! 2. I wish we had gone to Athens! 3. Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul! 4. O that he had not persuaded me! 5. May we be killed, if we surrender our arms! 6. Would that we were able to go with you!

LESSON 74

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),² follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ Plural of *inquit*. ² The treatment of main clauses involving command has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem videō meus amicus
est, the man whom I see is
my friend.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dicit virum quem videat suum
amicum esse, he says that
the man whom he sees is
his friend.

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret
suum amicum esse, he
said that the man whom
he saw was his friend.

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **videō** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dicit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. RULE. — Moods in Indirect Discourse. — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt. 2. Dixit militēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūniēbat. 4. Dīxērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnissent, castra mūnīvisse. 5. Caesar dixit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsire nōn posse. 6. Ariovistus Caesarī “Volō” inquit “his dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agī² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere² tēcum.” 7. Ariovistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after **audiō**. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after **dixit**. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who have conquered ought to rule³ those whom they have conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT
WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Acriter pugnātum est, *the battle was fought sharply, or there was sharp fighting* (literally, *it was sharply fought*).

¹ because.² agō, treat.³ imperō.

Vōs hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbīs hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgātī vēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar*.

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do*.

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion ; the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

Helvētīī lēgātōs mīsērunt	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut pācem peterent,} \\ \text{quī pācem peterent,} \\ \text{pācis petendae causā,} \\ \text{ad pācem petendam,} \\ \text{pācem petitum,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>the Helvetii sent ambassadors to seek peace.</i>
Militēs mittuntur	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ad pugnandum,} \\ \text{pugnandī causā,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>the soldiers are sent to fight.</i>

435. RULE. — Supine in **-um**. — *The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc est mīrābile dictū. 2. Ariovistus respondit, "Tē ad mē venīre oportet." 3. Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad

Caesarem vērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eīs ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculīs iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētīi rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dicit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to² see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

(READING SELECTION 465)

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example:

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.*

For all forms of this conjugation, see 529.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example:

Sciō quem vīsūrus sit, *I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.*

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ *direction.* ² *to see his daughters :* express in three ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example :

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised, or he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 530.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbīs veniendum est**.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūnienda, *the city must be fortified*.

Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est, *we ought to (or must) fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesari omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

1. **Vīsūrī erāmus**; **amātūra fuit**; **monitūrae erant**.
2. **Nōbīs cum Gallīs bellum gerendum est**.
3. **Incolae oppidī ēruptiōnem erant factūrī**.
4. **Caesari omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant**; **aciēs instruenda**, **sīgnum dandum**, **militēs ab opere revocandī erant**.
5. **Sī victūrī sumus**, **nōbīs fortissimē contendendum erit**.
6. **Sciēbam quid vōs factūrī**

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolīs quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

THE following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; *e. g.*, *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvis et agris semper dimicābant. Rōmānōrum periculum magnum erat. Multi in castris equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multi et parvī liberī, sed nōn erat cibī cōpia.

Tiberium, fidum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. "Nōne periculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam, pulchram filiam meam, amās. Nōne caput ferī Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tullia tuum praemium erit."

Mox Tiberium cum paucis militibus albī equī ad castra Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validī equī et virī erant. Helvētiī magnam praedam, vinum, frūmentum in castra portāverant. Superāverat vinum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vinō periculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, et mox ducis caput ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fidō Tulliam, filiam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberī virtūs militum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant; magnam frūmentī cōpiam et magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant.

20

quod fortis
446. erēbant. s in T. E BRIDGE

Porsena, rēx Clūsī, Rōmānōrum erat. Multis cōpiis militēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat et Rōmam urbem oppugnābat. Longus pōns in flūmine Tiberī lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, et cum feris hostibus dimicat. Magnā virtūte Rōmānī in ponte pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōsulem superāvērunt. Cōsul pontem dēlēre² parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Cocles, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dimicāvit. Magnum periculum erat, magna caedēs. Multis corporis vulneribus

¹ Clusium, a town of Etruria.

² destroy.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laetī Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

447. A STERN FATHER

Brūtus et Valerius cōsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tarquiniō¹ rēge pugnābant. Sed malī filiī Brūtī contrā patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucīs coniūrātīs Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed per Brūtī servum fidum, quod periculō terrēbātur, cōsuli nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiantur.² Ā cōsule filiī cum coniūrātīs in collem Capitōlinū³ magnā cum celeritāte convocantur. Tum Brūtus hominēs superbōs culpat quod contrā urbem armanentur. Pater miser filiōrum vitam nōn servāvit. Tum militēs hominēs malōs gladiīs necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,⁴ magna virtūs ā Rōmānīs grātis semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

448. THE ROMANS AND EXP. ELEPHANTS

Pyrrhum, Ēpirī⁵ rēgem, cōsul vir bonusque imperātor erat, Tarentī⁶ cīvē Italiam vocāvērunt. Cum Rōmānīs multīs proeliīs dimicāvit Rōmānōsque superāvit, quod elephantōs⁷ in Italiam portāverat, quae animālia ad Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānīs nōn vīsa erant. Sed Rōmānī, virī audācēs, pedēs elephantōrum pilīs vulnerābant magnaque animālium caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte militēs cum Pyrrhī cōpiīs dimicāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitibus habēbant.

¹ *Tarquin.*

² *report.*

³ *Capitoline.*

⁴ *very brave.*

⁵ *Ēpirus*, a country northwest of Greece.

⁶ *Tarentum*, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

⁷ *elephants.*

(To follow Lesson 27)

449. CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOOL

Carolus¹ Magnus, Francōrum² rēx, imperātorque³ Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit. Ibi filiī et potentium et reliquōrum litterās⁴ discēbant.⁵ Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium liberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Caroli temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs liberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit et “Quod primōrum,” inquit,⁶ “filiī estis, fidī discipulī nōne eritis? Omnēs mei cīvēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parem cūram ā magistris incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem⁷ augēre cupiō,⁸ quod¹⁰ fortēs mei Francī sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs librīs et litterīs superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō discētis, quod pigri discipulī nōn servābunt dōna mea meamque amīcitiam.”

(To follow Lesson 30)

450. BRENNUS, THE GALLIC GENERAL, IN ROME

Rōmānī antīquīs temporibus cum Gallis, Ītalīae partis¹⁵ incolis, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et Ītaliā vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmānī cum Gallis contendērunt, sed hostēs Rōmānōs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbem Rōmam contendēbant. In urbe neque in portis neque in viīs hominēs vīdērunt, sed aedificia alta et pulchra²⁰ laudābant. In Forō⁹ sedilia vīdērunt, ubi principēs Rōmānī sedēbant.¹⁰ Gladiis Galli principēs Rōmānōrum necāvērunt. Rōmānī lēgātōs ad ” ” mīsērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō libertāte Gall ” ” Sed superbus

¹ Charles.² the Franks.³ here emperor.⁴ letters.⁵ study.⁶ said (he).⁷ praise, reputation.⁸ wish, desire.⁹ market place, Forum.¹⁰ sit.

Gallōrum dux gladium in librā¹ conlocāvit et “Vae² victis!” exclāmāvit.³ Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legiōnēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 33)

451. SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

Proeliō asperō milītēs contendēbant, multaque corpora
 5 et vulnerātōrum et interfectōrum hominum in terrā fuērunt.
 In quibus erat ūnus ē principibus quī ab omnibus propter
 virtutem amābātur. Sed vulnerātus ille et vulnere et siti⁴
 labōrābat. Cui amīcī auxiliū dare mātūrāvērunt. Miles
 illi aquam⁵ in pōculō portāvit. Tum “Hanc aquam,” inquit,
 10 “dux Philippe, quam ex flūmine portāvi habēbis. Grāta
 miserō hominī aqua erit.” Sed Philippus mox militem
 vulnerātum vīdit quī illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. “Huic
 militi hanc aquam dabis,” inquit. Nōne hoc pulchrum
 factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

452. WILLIAM TELL

15 Helvētia⁶ hodiē libera civitās est, sed nōn semper erat.
 Temporibus antiquis superbus homō, quī Gesslerus ap-
 pellābātur, Helvētiaē imperium habēbat. Is lignum⁷ in
 viā cōstituit, in quō pilleum⁸ posuit, omnēsque quī illā viā
 iter faciēbant pillei auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Illud
 20 sōlus ex incolis Guglielmus⁹ Tellus nōn fēcit. Audivit
 Gesslerus et territus est. “Quem ille nōn movēbit?” inquit.
 “Alii idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō liberābi-
 tur.”

Ab omnibus Tellus, quod sagittārum perītus erat, laudā-

¹ *balance, pair of scales.*

² *woe.*

³ *cry out.*

⁴ *thirst.*

⁵ *water.*

⁶ *Switzerland.*

⁷ *pole.*

⁸ *cap.*

⁹ *William.*

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōnsilium cēpit. Parvum Tellī puerum in viā conlocārī et mālum¹ in capite pōnī iussit. In mālum Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō eī dixit: “Nōne hoc faciēs?⁵ Si² nōn faciēs, filium tuum interficiam.” Itaque Tellius sagittam mīsīt, quae in mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs quī viderant Tellī factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus “Cūr alteram cēpisti sagittam?” inquit. “Haec sagitta,” inquit Tellius, “in³ tuam mortem servāta est, quod post¹⁰ pueri mei mortem nullis moenibus dēfēsus eris.” Audīvit Gesslerus et magnā celeritātē Tellium in vinculis nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbum hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque liberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

453. ARNOLD WINKELRIED

Helvētia Tellī virtūte libera facta erat. Sed incolae,¹⁵ propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs milites nōn habebant quī patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs et equitēs, Helvētiae finitimī, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servis habēre cupiēbant. Magnus militum exercitus in Helvētiam missus est. His militibus longae hastae, magnī²⁰ gladii, incolis Helvētiae sagittae et saxa erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētiī convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastis longīs agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās²⁵ in milites mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā²⁵ sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppug²⁵abant, sed nullum militem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illis, cui Arnoldus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exiit itaque⁴ dixit:

¹ *apple.*

² *if.*

³ *for.*

⁴ *and thus, and so.*

“Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum liberis et uxōre¹ est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vitā patriae meae cīvibusque meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertātī faciam.” Tum, nūllis armis armātus, in hastās multās hostium corpus
 5 suum, ūnus prō omnibus, misit. Amicī fortissimī trāns corpus virī audācis, quod humī erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācri animō territī et in fugam datī sunt. Sed Helvētīi per omne futūrum tempus liberī remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedī virtūte, quam omnēs semper
 10 laudābunt, servātī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Ītaliae prōvinciā, trium millium pedum altitūdine est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbis “lava” appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus antīquōrum Rōmānōrum pulcher
 15 mōns erat, sub quō multī et agricolae et mercātōrēs vicos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum, vinum multum in agrīs et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe principēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in hīs oppidīs manēbant et hiemem fugiēbant. Sed haec omnia LXXIX
 20 post Christum annīs, mēse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium longārum³ dux, cum Pliniō alterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēni, quī portus Rōmānus fuit, erat. Eī ēruptiō Vesuvī facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vidit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.⁵
 25 Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque miseris auxilium parābat. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum quī alii aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illīs, dē quibus dīximus, in itinere interfectus est.

¹ wife.

² Pliny.

³ nāvis longa, a warship.

⁴ grandson.

⁵ smoke.

Omnēs agrī, omnēs follow Lesson 51)

sunt. Post paucōs CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER
omnēs agrōs com

monte conlocāta, pae liberae temporibūs Rōmae iuvenis
tōs annōs ab ūllō paeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat,
Ītaliā iter faciū sed nōn cōnsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod
vident in hīs locī, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit.
vias cum aedifi olscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestāte
rēs, quae in in illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere
taque dē antio us belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt.
quī illās rēs vīn multitudine ad urbem accesserant eamque
obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commisērunt,

in hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminae 10

ad Veturiā, Coriolānī mātrem, eiusque uxōrem

am convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis

Faler hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere

Sed fce erant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō

ab hos im agmen accēdere nūntiātur, primō superbissimē 15

cum pu pit. Ubi autem ā sedilī suō mātrem vīdit, maximē

Cuius ? ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia "Hostisne filius,"

Rōmān ad mē venit captaque ā militibus māter tua in tuis

um? Grāta mihi vīta esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē

in opf tuae hostem, civibus nōn amīcum reperiō. Nōne in 20

filiōs trem tuam, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōstrā-

incolae im exercitū tuō in Volscōs redibis atque urbī Rōmā-

venient rtatē reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miseri⁹ ego

dabunt. itā vīdī nec vidēre poterō."

permōt nātris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra 25

magist ivitatēque liberam servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus

certiō is postea interfectus est. Fēminis fortissimis sum-

judem Rōmānī dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō

¹ In subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

the ver

² wh.

¹ tears.

² words.

“Trāns illum montem mihi domus . Itaque pācem cum
 est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vitā patriae Rōmānae clientēs
 meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertā
 nullis armīs armātus, in hastās multā
 5 suum, ūnus prō omnibus, mīsīt. Amī
 corpus virī audācis, quod humī erat, imSAR
 virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācri animō or, dē quō omnēs
 dati sunt. Sed Helvētīi per omne futūrum iuvenis iter per
 remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedi virtūte, quam ad vicum per-
 10 laudābunt, servātī sunt. Superbior ille

(To follow Lesson 42)

rimum poterat.

Sed Caesar,

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS nōn est.

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Itāliae prōvinciā Rōmae
 millium pedum altitūdine est. Ex eō et ignis e
 saxōrum, quod ā nōbis “lava” appellātur, saepe, um suis
 mittitur. Sed temporibus antiquōrum Rōmānōrum, vinciā
 15 mōns erat, sub quō multī et agricolae et mercātōrēs t Itāliae
 oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum pellātur.
 multum in agris et in collibus erat, multae in lt diūque
 nāvēs. Saepe principēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in his · adven-
 manēbant et hiemem fugiēbant. Sed haec omnia t trānsiit,
 20 post Christum annīs, mēse Augustō, cāsū miserō ter cum
 sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium long
 dux, cum Pliniō alterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēni, quī numerō
 Rōmānus fuit, erat. Eī ēruptiō Vesuvi facta esse nū portūs
 Et ipse vidit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter f trānsire
 25 Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque partem
 auxilium parābat. Undique clāmōrem miserum at iēbant.
 hominum quī aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et iper faci-
 cēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illis, dē quibus dixitās por-
 itinere interfectus est.

¹ wife.

² Pliny.

³ nāvis longa, a warship.

⁴ grandson. answer.

(To follow Lesson 51)

457. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Prīmīs rei pūblicae liberae temporibꝯ Rōmae iuvenis quīdam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, vir maximā virtūte sed nōn cōsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestāte monuit. Itaque illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrābant, cuius belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā militum multitūdine ad urbem accesserant eamque castris et vāllō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commiserunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuerunt. Sed fēminae Rōmānae ad Veturiam, Coriolānī mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniam convēnerunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis parvis in hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūtiātur, primō superbissimē¹⁵ eās recēpit. Ubi autem ā sedili suō mātrem vidit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia “Hostisne filius,” inquit, “ad mē venit captaque ā militibus māter tua in tuis castris sum? Grāta mihi vita esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, civibus nōn amicum reperiō. Nōnne in²⁰ mē, mātrem tuam, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōstrābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redibis atque urbi Rōmānae libertātem reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miserius ego tōtā in vitā vidī nec vidēre poterō.”

His mātris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra²⁵ mōvit civitātemque liberam servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscis postea interfectus est. Fēminis fortissimīs summam laudem Rōmānī dedērunt templumque Fortūnae pro eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāverunt.

¹ tears.² words.

(To follow Lesson 54)

458. THE FAITHFUL WIVES OF WEINSBERG

Imperātor quīdam Germānus oppidum mūnitissimum, quod Weinsberg appellātur, quod cīvēs liberī esse cupiēbant, obsidēbat. Cottidiānis proeliis oppidi incolae cum militibus imperātōris pugnantēs nec vincere poterant nec vincī. At¹ post longum tempus rei frumentāriae inopiā oppidum labōrābat, quod commeātū omni prohibēbātur. Quā dē causā litterās ad imperātōrem scripsērunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestātem dēdidērunt. Ille autem haec dē pāce cōstituit. Mulierēs omnēs exire iussit. “Portābitis ex oppidō,” inquit, “vōbiscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnēs occīdi iubēbō.” Diē proximō, signō datō, exeunt ē portā mulierēs, quārum quaeque virum suum portābat. Tum miserae fēminae sē ad imperātōris pedēs iaciunt. At¹ ille permōtus viris vitam dōnāvit² oppidum-
que tūtum ā militibus asperis servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

459. TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Colōnī³ Americānī, quī rēgis Britannōrum imperia sibi nocēre crēdēbant, litterās ad rēgem mittere cōstituērunt, quibus summās Britannōrum iniūriās⁴ dēmōstrābant. Quās litterās cōficere ūnus ex nōbiliōribus, Samuel Adams nōmine, ab iis iussus est. Filia autem Samuēlis parva literis visis patri “Spērō,” inquit, “brevi tempore litterās rēgis in manibus futūrās esse.” Cui pater respondit: “Ego, mea filia, existimō rēgem superbissimum pedēs suōs in nostris litteris positūrum esse.”
Militum Britannōrum dux, Gagiū⁵ nōmine, ā colōnis frumentum cōferri audiverat, quō sē potitūrum esse spērābat.

¹ but.² give.³ colonists.⁴ wrongs.⁵ Gage.

Erant autem Bostōnī¹ virī patriae amantissimī, quī igne plēbī dēmōnstrātūrī erant Britannum ducem profectum esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā civibz visī sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, perītissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscendit² et maximā celeritāte per vicōs³ iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sic tandem³ ad oppidum Lexingtonium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes⁴ Hancock in amicōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagiū quam maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō monitī militēs Britannōs fūgerunt. 10

Fortissimī erant militēs Americānī, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō⁵ quīdam ūnum ex suis militibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dicitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: “Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcula portāvī. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis.”¹⁵ Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtonius arborem⁶ maximam militēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vidit et eis centuriōnem auxilium ferre iussit. Ille autem “Num mē centuriōnem,” inquit, “esse tū scīs?”

(To follow Lesson 60)

460. MORE TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Multi inter Americānōs Washingtoniō, maximō ducī, tam²⁰ inimicī erant ut ei imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Cīvis quīdam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audīvisse dicitur. Summā cum diligentīā accessit ut causam cōgnōsceret. Quid autem eum vidisse arbitrāmini? Washingtonius humī Deum multis²⁵ cum lacrimis rogābat ut patriam auxiliō servāret. Cōnspectū permōtus, cīvis rediit neque ab illō visus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dixit virum tam bonum Deō persuādere dēbuisse.

¹ locative, at Boston. ² mount. ³ at length. ⁴ John. ⁵ captain. ⁶ tree.

Philadelphiae¹ exercitus Britannōrum in hibernis erat. Illō tempore Howius,² exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washingtōnī, quae praesidiō finitimīs castrīs erant, pelleret cōsiliū cēpit. Semper autem eius cōsiliis ducī Americānō
 5 nūntiātis nē ea perficeret impeditus est. Itaque multā nocte lēgātī et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lȳdiae Darrah nōmine, convēnērunt. Nē cōsilia audirentur eam cum omnibus suis in domūs superiōrem partem ire coēgit. Ipse in parte inferiōre lēgātōs imperiis suis summā cum
 10 diligentīā pārēre iussit. Lȳdia autem, ut omnia quae dicēbantur audiret, ad ōstium³ accesserat. Ubi lēgātī domum reliquērunt, eam nihil dē cōsiliis scire crēdentēs, virō sē ad vicum quendam profectūram esse dixit ut rem frūmentāriam suis comparāret. Quem in vicum ubi
 15 vēnit, centuriōnī Americānō ea quae audiverat nūntiāvit ita ut Washingtōnius dē periculō monitus exercitui Britannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam quae Lȳdia tam fortiter fēcerat ante bellī finem audivit.

In proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vicum factō Tarletōnius, 20 lēgātus Britannōrum, quī dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō Washingtōniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Postea mulierī cuidam Washingtōnium tam ferum esse dixit ut nōmen suum scribere nōn sciret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōnstrāns “At optimē,” inquit, “suum signum facere scit.”
 25 Illis autem temporibus ei quī scribere nōn sciēbant signum prō nōmine faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

461. THE BURNT HAND

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

¹ locative.

² *Howe*.

³ *door* (of house or room).

frūmentum nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quīdam bellum cōficere cōstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō qui rēgem gladiō necāret misērunt. Agricolam sē esse simulāns¹ Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petivit.⁵ Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quēdam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcīt. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātis interfēcisset, “Rōmānus sum,” inquit, “quī patriae meae¹⁰ hostem necāre volui.” Quae ubi rēx audīvit, ut igni cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in igni positā, “Ignem tuum,” inquit, “minimē vereor. Plūrimī mihi sunt sociī, quī tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redībīs.” Quibus verbis¹⁵ superbissimis audītis Porsena iuvenī libertātem dōnāvit, magnō cīvis Rōmāni animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et postea ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is quī manum sōlam sinistram habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

462. FOLLOW THE FLAG

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā pro-²⁰fectus esset, proximō diē in cōspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare expectantēs vidit. Tantaе autem magnitudinis nāvēs Rōmānae erant ut terrae appropinquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territi hostiumque tēla veritī militēs Rōmāni nōn eādē quā solēbant² virtūte in²⁵ proeliō ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, militēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum militēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is quī decimae legiōnis signum ferēbat, postquam deōs ut sibi

¹ *pretending.*

² *be accustomed.*

praesidiō essent rogāvit, “Mē,” inquit, “sequēminī, militēs, nisi vultis signum nostrum in hostium manibus esse. Ego quae ab imperātōre iussus sum faciam.” Haec cum dixisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs signum ferre coepit. Tum
 5 Rōmānī cohortātī inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquerent, signum secūtī in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Ācriter ab utrisque pugnātum est. Rōmānīs tamen arma multum prōderant, ita ut summā vī pugnantes hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69)

463. TWO BRAVE RIVALS

10 Caesar ē Britannīā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hibernīs praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā profectus est. Gallī autem absente Rōmānōrum imperātōre libertate suā iterum potiri cōnātī sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimīs cōpiīs circumvēnissent, tantā vī in ea impetum
 15 fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur, neque tamen Rōmānōrum castra expugnāre potuērunt. Erant in exercitū duo virī fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annīs dē ōrdine contendēbant. Ē quibus Pullō, cum ācerrimē prō castris pugnārētur, “Quid,
 20 Vorēne,” inquit, “exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iūdicābit.”¹ Haec cum dixisset, ē castris prōcessit et, ubi plūrimī hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmīcāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castris tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secutus est. Pilum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illis
 25 interficit. Omnēs autem hostēs tēlis in Pullōnem missis prōgredi eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūtī cōnantem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illi auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

¹ *decide.*

ā Gallis circumventus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectis summō cum clāmōre militum sē in castra recēperit. Sic fortūnā factum est ut inimicī alter alterī auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

464. IN LIGHTER VEIN

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,¹ Scīpiōnī, summō Rōmā-
nōrum ducī, amicissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scīpiō
Ennī ad domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poētā conloqueretur,
servus quī ōstium servābat "Dominus," inquit, "meus
abest." Vīsus tamen erat Ennius ā Scīpiōne, in domūs
superiōre parte sē tenēns. Post paucōs diēs Ennius Scīpi-
ōnis ad domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī "Domī," inquit,
"ego nōn sum." Tum Ennius "Ego autem tē et videō
et audiō." "Quid?" Scīpiō respondit, "ego servō tuō
crēdidī: tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdēs?"

¹Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum
illud quod cīvēs nostrī alterī cum alterīs gessērunt, civi-
tātī praeerat. Is fābulis saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs quī ad sē
veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid
sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit.
Dēnique tamen morbo² quōdam labōrābat, quī ā nobīs
"variola"³ appellātur. Tum medicō⁴ ille "Laetus," in-
quit, "sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūnī cuique dare pos-
sim quī habēre cupiat."

Centuriō quīdam, quī ante bellī finem ab exercitū discē-
dere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impeditus est.
Cum pārēre nōllet, Shermānus illi "Nisi tū," inquit, "in
castra redieris, tē interficī iubēbō." Post paucōs diēs cum
Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dixit-
que: "Lēgātus mē discēderē nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

¹ poet. ² illness. ³ varioloid (a mild form of smallpox). ⁴ physician.

rediissem, mē interficī iussisset.” Lincolnius et ad lēgātum et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illi “Scīsne,” inquit, “quid ego putem? Sī Shermānus sē mē interfectūrum esse dixisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum
5 id facere et velle et posse.”

(To follow Lesson 75)

465. AN EXAMPLE OF ROMAN FORTITUDE

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iis laudātus sit. Inter multa alia nōbilissimum Rēgulī factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō primō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marique
10 vicerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illis in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānis Carthāginiēnsēs cōfirmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam misērunt, ut dē pāce cōfirmandā civēs certiōrēs faceret. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicērētur sē, sī Rōmānis persuādere
15 nōn posset, in Āfricam reversūrum esse. Rōmam p̄fectus Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōfirmārent. Haec sunt quae illis dīxit: “Utinam nē ad vōs venire coāctus essem! Rēs mihi turpissima vidēbātur cum nostrōs vīdī ab hostibus manibus
20 vinctis in urbem dūcī. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, sī pecūniā datā libertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōsili praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vitae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victoriā darem. Morte meā incitāti, civēs, bellum for-
25 tissimē gerite.” Itaque senātui persuāsit. Cum autem amici nē in Āfricam in vincula rediret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārere nōluit. Carthāginem rediit, ubi ā Carthāginiēnsibus interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmānī quam maximē incitāti Carthāginiēnsēs vicērunt. Utinam nostra
30 patria semper in suis finibus tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

466. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnū relīquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiā, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁵ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁴ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō relīquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitudinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque⁵ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adultī⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdīcrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā 15

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² *pulsō (pellō) frātre*, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ *but she*. ⁴ See 311, 7. *impositōs abiēcit*: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, *imposuit et abiēcit*. ⁵ *mātremque sē gessit*, *acted like a mother*. ⁶ *very often*. ⁷ *adultī (adolēscō)*, *when grown* (literally, *having grown*). ⁸ *lūdīcrīs certāminibus*, *with playful contests*.

⁹ From *vīs*; do not confuse with *vir*, *virī*.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātis pāstōribus Albam² pro-
15 perāvit.

467. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs infēstāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscētis vultum cōn-
10 sīderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris lineāmentis⁵ erat mātīrī simillimus aetās-que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vidit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustias inridēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus¹³ Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: "Sic¹⁴ deinde, quī-
25 cumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!" Ita sōlus potitus est imperiō¹⁵ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369-374. ² See 237. ³ *on the ground that.* ⁴ *haud . . . āgnōsceret, came very near recognizing his grandson.* ⁵ See 157. ⁶ *dum, while,* regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imperfect; translate "*was keeping.*" ⁷ *restituō.* ⁸ *condō.* ⁹ *as to which of the two.* ¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ *dēcernō.* ¹² *its.* ¹³ *in anger.* ¹⁴ Supply *pereat, let him perish,* or some similar verb. ¹⁵ For case, see 337.

468. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret⁴ cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī⁵ deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multi¹⁰ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque⁶ conversae mentēs⁷ cum oculīs erant, tum sīgnō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁸

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs¹⁵ raptās⁹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹⁰ quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum¹¹ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī¹² exercitum suum²⁰ in Capitōliū perdūxisset. Illa petiit quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent,¹³ videlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissis, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, near by. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = esset, would be. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of indicō, to be announced. ⁶ eō = in spectāculum. ⁷ mentēs cum oculīs, minds and eyes alike (literally, minds with eyes). ⁸ The connective, et, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (literally, on account of the seized maidens). ¹⁰ nanciscor. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 435. ¹² sī . . . perdūxisset, if she would lead. ¹³ wore.

dūxit, ubi Tatiū scūtīs eam¹ obruī iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

469. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi
5 nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō
impetū vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmīcāns³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmītābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs
10 rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs orantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.

15 Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm haud ita multō post, occīsō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex senīōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs ita ordinātīs, cum ad⁹ exercitum
20 lūstrandum cōtīōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirinālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitutā, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirinus est
25 appellātus.

¹ eam obruī iussit, ordered her to be buried. ² et ea, these also. ³ while fighting. ⁴ cadō. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, that it is one thing . . . quite another. ⁷ resistō, held its ground. ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 406, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, he was believed. ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

470. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima īstituit. Āram Vestae cōnsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit. Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque īsignī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmīssīs, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī¹⁰ certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsit. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ dēlābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferri¹⁵ posset, Māmuriū fabrum ūndecim scūta eādē fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdīrent.

471. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscripsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcīt; portās²⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept. ⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent prōcūranda, should be taken care of (i.e. averted). ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādē fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcīt, he made a distinction between sacred days and business days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armīs esse cīvitatē, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, significābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem īnstitūtis suis auctōritatem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Egeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitris sē īferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuīt, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum
 10 nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā
 15 rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

472. MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam⁸ trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope
 20 tribūnāl cōstitit.¹⁰ Stipendium tunc forte militibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occidit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with Iānus understood, subject of significābat, when opened.

² sibi esse, that he had: why is sibi dative? ³ eiusque monitū, at her suggestion. ⁴ quem medium, the middle of which. ⁵ perennī aquā: see 303.

⁶ eā pietāte, with such piety. ⁷ sepeliō. ⁸ veniam trānsfugiendī, permission to go over (to the enemy). ⁹ privilegium. ¹⁰ cōsistō. ¹¹ pertrahō.

¹² accēnsō foculō, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua quoque eī honōris grātiā cōstitutā est.

473. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōsulis, tribūnus militum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angustīs Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōspēxit imminentem hostium castrīs. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³¹⁰ occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdūcendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem insēderat undique armātīs circumdatō, intempestā nocte per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵ ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est corōnā cīvica, quae¹⁵ dabātur eī qui⁶ cīvēs in bellō servāsset. Cōsul fuit bellō Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrīque cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrīus cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret.²⁰ Inclīnante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus dēvōvit. Armātus in equum insiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs immisit; corruit obrutus tēlis et victōriam suis reliquit.

¹ Refers to Mūcius. ² Valeriō . . . cōsulis, *in the consulship of*, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. ³ the summit of the hill. ⁴ per . . . cūstōdiās, *through the midst of the enemy's pickets*. ⁵ safely. ⁶ one who. ⁷ cum . . . obvēnisset; *when the two consuls had dreamed* (literally, *when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream*). ⁸ ut . . . dēvovēret is subject of convēnit; translate "*it was agreed among them that he whose (utrīus), etc., should,*" etc. ⁹ Nominative.

474. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

- I. Gāius Duilius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvīcit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vėlōcitatē superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae
 5 manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgridiebātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmīcābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, quī rōbore prae-
 stābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātae nāvēs Pūnicae trīgintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.
- 10 Duilius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī⁶ terrā iam etiam marī plūrimū⁷ possent. Itaque Duiliō⁸ concessum est ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībīcine ā cēnā redīret.
- 15 II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicae, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmīttēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā infēlicī pugnā priusquam clādīs nūntius domum pervenīret
 20 quendam ex amicīs Carthāginem mīsīt. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, “Cōnsulit”¹⁰ inquit “vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs īnstrūctīs advēnerit, num cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat?” Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōnflīgī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvīcit, *was the first to conquer.* ² manūs ferreās, *grappling irons.* ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence.
⁵ mergō. ⁶ invictī terrā, *victorious on land.* ⁷ plūrimū possent, *they were supreme.* ⁸ Duiliō concessum est ut, etc., *Duilius was allowed to, etc.*
⁹ classis āmissae, *for losing the fleet.* ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, *asks your advice as to whether.* ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflīxit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fieri dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

5

475. APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāset,¹⁰ pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi⁴ irātīs diīs, mīlītēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum mīllia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vīgintī mīllia capta. Quā rē Claudius postea ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque ignōminiam voluntāriā morte praevenit. Ea rēs calamitātī⁵ fuit etiam Claudiaē,⁵ cōsulis sorōrī: quae ā lūdīs pūblicīs revertēns in cōnfertā multitūdine aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revivisceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ eī dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, on the same day that. ² auspicia habēret, was consulting the auspices. ³ Infinitive of edō, to eat. ⁴ quasi irātīs diīs, because (as they thought) the gods were angry. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, so that. ⁷ = esset.

⁸ gravisque . . . multa, and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

476. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hibernis est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandī³ hae erant causae: primum nōlēbant⁴ nostrum exercitum ad sē⁵ addūcī,⁶ deinde ab nōnnullis Gallis sollicitābantur. Hī populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnullī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs⁷ imperiis studēbant. Ab nōnnullis etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iis quī condūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem⁹ imperiō¹⁰ nostrō cōsequī poterant.

CHAPTER II

477. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliam cum hīs legiōnibus Quīntum Peditum lēgātum mīsit. Ipse paucis post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manum cōgī et exercitum Belgārum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficiscī.¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, one another (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led. ⁷ novīs imperiis, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ eam rem . . . cōsequī, to do this. ¹⁰ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹¹ See map of Gaul, page 10. ¹² From cōscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

478. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī “Nōs” inquiunt “omnia in ; fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidis³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum¹⁰ incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentire.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

479. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sīc reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs¹⁵ propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrīsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibitīs eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum. ² ex Belgīs, of the Belgae. ³ oppidis recipere = in oppida recipere. ⁴ From coniungō. ⁵ from conspiring.

⁶ Teutonīs . . . prohibitīs, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.

⁷ from entering. ⁸ deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.

⁹ omnia explōrāta, full information.

explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīllia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.
 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque tōtius bellī sum-
 mam omnium voluntāte dēferri.

CHAPTER V

480. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND
ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē con-
 10 venīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit.
 Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse
 Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut
 manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās
 Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁴ et eōrum
 15 agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit.
 Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās
 ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vidit, flūmen Axonam
 exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit.
 Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat
 20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In
 eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā
 parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex co-
 hortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim
 vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is *memoriā*, 479, line 18, ablative?
² *on.* ³ *ad diem*, to the very day. ⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ *Quae rēs*,
 this position, i.e. crossing the river. ⁶ *quae . . . essent*, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

 481. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF
THE REMI

Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circum-
iectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus² undique in
mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōri-
bus nūdātus est, testūdine³ factā portās succēdunt mūrum-
que subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta
multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī
potestās erat nulli.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset,¹⁰
Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad Cae-
sarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius
sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

482. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem⁶ ducibus ūsus⁷ quī
nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et
funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum
adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque
paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dē-
populātī, multis vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, ad castra Cae-
sarīs omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab⁹ millibus passuum²⁰

¹ sustentātum est, the attack was sustained (literally, it was sustained).

² Dative, governed by circumiectā. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in nūntium mittit. ⁶ isdem

ducibus, the same persons as guides. ⁷ using. ⁸ For construction, see 294,

295. ⁹ An adverb, away, off.

minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut¹ fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīllibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

483. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opīniō-
 5 nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottīdiē tamen
 equestribus proeliīs quid² hostis virtūte posset et quid nos-
 trī audērent perīclitābātur.³ Nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs
 intellēxit. Locus prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam erat
 nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-
 10 lulum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum⁴ adversus in lātitudinem
 patēbat quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat. Ab⁵
 utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit cir-
 citer passuum quādringentōrum et ad⁶ extrēmās fossās
 castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
 15 aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab⁵ lateribus pugnantes suōs
 circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās
 proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs
 prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex
 castrīs ēductās⁷ instrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

484. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

20 Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exer-
 citum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant⁸;

¹ *as*; *ut* with the indicative means "*as*" or "*when*." ² *quid . . . posset*, *what the enemy could do by their valor*. ³ *he tried to ascertain*. ⁴ *tantum patēbat quantum locī*, *spread over as much space as*. ⁵ *on*. ⁶ *ad extrēmās fossās*, *at the ends of the trenches*. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ *were waiting to see*.

nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trāseundī fieret, ut¹ impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trāseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs, prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potu-
issent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

485. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT
FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impeditōs in flūmine aggressi¹ magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁵ interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē⁶ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt² neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredierentur, *to attack*, depending upon parātī erant. ² secundiōre . . . nostrīs, abl. absolute; *since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men.* ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of trādūcere cōnātī sunt. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). ⁷ unfavorable.

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque revertī ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam
 5 sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs³ persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

486. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY
DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac
 10 tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, cōn-
 15 firmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemisit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa millia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.
 20 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostri interfēcērunt quantum⁷ fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁸ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, *that it was best.* ² consideration. ³ Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.* ⁵ quā dē causā, *why.* ⁶ See 364. ⁷ quantum . . . spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.* ⁸ as.

CHAPTER XII

487. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUESSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postridiē eius diēi Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vineīs¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitūtīs, magnitudine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

10

CHAPTER XIII

488. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditionē Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīllia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs¹⁵ maiōrēs⁵ nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁶ manibus²⁰ suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² *moved*, from *agō*. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ *petentibus Rēmīs*, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ *pandō*.

CHAPTER XIV

489. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba : Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitatīs Haeduae fuisse : impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsili prīncipēs¹ fuissent,²
 5 quod³ intellegerent² quantam calamitātem cīvitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcerit,² Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum,
 10 quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērint.²

CHAPTER XV

490. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVII

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit ; quod erat cīvitas magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte⁶ atque hominum
 15 multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat :
 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus⁷ ; patī nihil vīnī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īferri : esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ *authors*. ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. — cōnsuērint = cōnsuēverint. ³ *because*. ⁴ Quod . . . fēcerit, *if he should do this*.

⁵ sī . . . inciderint, *whatever wars occurred*. ⁶ For construction, see 303.

⁷ See 231. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ *because*.

sent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

491. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius millia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre ūnā¹ cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis; expectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitui⁵ aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

492. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnītis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā⁶ iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt. Hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸ negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptīs futurum⁹ ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervīi autem antiquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent,

¹ ūnā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātis. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 231. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futurum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae instar mūrī mūnimenta praebērent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impeditum² īrī Nervīi existimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

493. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlē-
 5 gerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen
 Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
 parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs
 infimus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn
 facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in
 10 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen
 paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat alti-
 tudō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

494. THE NERVII CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs.
 Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā
 15 Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius
 exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs,
 quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant
 praesidiōque⁶ impedimentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum
 funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī, cum hostium
 20 equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in
 silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs
 impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ īnsequī nōn audēbant.

¹ *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briers to grow among them. ² *impeditum* īrī; future passive infinitive.

³ *at the foot.* ⁴ *ab superiōre parte, in the upper part.* ⁵ *along.* ⁶ See 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with *hostēs* understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī cele-
ritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

10

CHAPTER XX

495. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. SPLENDID DISCIPLINE
OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevītās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae⁵ rēs erant subsidiō⁶ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnqui-
tātem et celeritātem hostium nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, *after laying out the work*. Dīmēnsō from dīmētior.
² in manibus nostrīs, *close upon us*. ³ adversō colle, *up the hill*. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescribere . . . poterant, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsī)*. ⁸ his (respective). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . at all. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best*.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

496. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stella	-a	stellae	-ae
GEN.	stellae	-ae	stellārum	-ārum
DAT.	stellae	-ae	stellis	-is
ACC.	stellam	-am	stellās	-ās
ABL.	stellā	-ā	stellis	-is

497. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN.	hortī	-ī	dōnī	-ī
DAT.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

PLURAL

NOM.	hortī	-ī	dōna	-a
GEN.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is
ACC.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte**.

SINGULAR

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	filius
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	filī, -iī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum	filium
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō

PLURAL

NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	filīi
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filīōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filīōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filī**.

498.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR

 CASE ENDINGS FOR
CONSONANT STEMS
M. AND F. N.

NOM.	dux	mīles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT.	ducī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capiti	-ī	-ī
ACC.	ducem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
ABL.	duce	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

PLURAL

NOM.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN.	ducum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	ducēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL.	ducibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	hominī	patri	corpori
ACC.	cōnsule m	homin e m	patr e m	corp u s
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsul u m	homin u m	patr u m	corpor u m
DAT.	cōnsul i b ^{us}	homin i b ^{us}	patr i b ^{us}	corpor i b ^{us}
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsul i b ^{us}	homin i b ^{us}	patr i b ^{us}	corpor i b ^{us}

δ. -I- STEMS

CASE ENDINGS
FOR -I- STEMS

SINGULAR

M. AND F. N.

NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is
DAT.	collī	caedī	montī	animālī	-ī	-ī
ACC.	colle m	caed e m	mont e m	animal	- e m	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	-e	-ī

PLURAL

NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
GEN.	coll i um	caed i um	mont i um	animāli u m	-i u m	-i u m
DAT.	coll i b ^{us}	caed i b ^{us}	mont i b ^{us}	animāl i b ^{us}	-i b^{us}	-i b^{us}
ACC.	collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālia	-is, ēs	-ia
ABL.	coll i b ^{us}	caed i b ^{us}	mont i b ^{us}	animāl i b ^{us}	-i b^{us}	-i b^{us}

499. FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -u-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsus	- us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	cās u s	- ūs	corn u s	- ūs
DAT.	cāsui, ū	- ui , ū	cornū	-ū
ACC.	cās u m	- um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

	MASC.	PLURAL CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuūm	-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

500. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

501. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	SINGULAR	
NOM.	vir	vīs deus
GEN.	virī	— dei
DAT.	virō	— deō
ACC.	virum	vīm deum
ABL.	virō	vī deō
	PLURAL	
NOM.	virī	vīrēs dei, diī, dī
GEN.	virōrum	vīrium deōrum, deum
DAT.	virīs	vīribus deīs, diīs, dīs
ACC.	virōs	vīrēs deōs
ABL.	virīs	vīribus deīs, diīs, dīs
	SINGULAR	
NOM.	senex	iter domus
GEN.	senis	itineris domūs
DAT.	senī	itinerī domui, ō
ACC.	senem	iter domum
ABL.	sene	itinere domō, ū

PLURAL		
NOM.	senēs	itinera domūs
GEN.	senum	itinerum domuum, ōrum
DAT.	senibus	itineribus domibus
ACC.	senēs	itinera domōs, ūs
ABL.	senibus	itineribus domibus

ADJECTIVES

502. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā bonō
PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs bonīs
SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
NOM.	liber	libera liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae liberō
ACC.	liberum	liberam liberum
ABL.	liberō	liberā liberō
PLURAL		
NOM.	liberī	liberae libera
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum liberōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs liberīs
ACC.	liberōs	liberās libera
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs liberīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

NOM.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

503.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs, ēs	ācrīs, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SINGULAR

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
GEN.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
DAT.	facili	facili	ferāci	ferāci
ACC.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
ABL.	facili	facili	ferāci, e	ferāci, e

	PLURAL			
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilēs	facilia	ferācēs	ferācia
GEN.	facilium	facilium	ferācium	ferācium
DAT.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus
ACC.	facilis, ēs	facilia	ferācis, ēs	ferācia
ABL.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus	ferācibus

504. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantis, ēs	amantia
ABL.	amante, ī	amānte, ī	amantibus	amantibus
NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
DAT.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntis, ēs	euntia
ABL.	eunte, ī	eunte, ī	euntibus	euntibus

505. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
GEN.	alius	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
ACC.	aliū	aliā	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria	
GEN.	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium	
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus	
ACC.	ūnum	ūnā	ūnum	tris, trēs	tria	
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus	

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīllia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	millium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīllia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus

506. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōcior, vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similior, similius	simillimus, a, um

507.. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, is	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre, ī	lātiōre, ī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

508.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um	—, plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multī, ae, a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimi, ae, a
vetus, veteris	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senēx, senis	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
inferus	inferior	infimus, imus
posterus.	posterior	postrēmus
		postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus
(Lacking positive supplied by adverb or preposition)		summus

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[cis, citrā, <i>this side</i>]	citerior	citimus
[in, intrā, <i>within</i>]	interior	intimus
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior	primus
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior	proximus
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior	ultimus

509.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (carus)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

510.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS

ORDINALS

1. ūnus, a, um	prīmus, a, um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (<i>or</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus

CARDINALS		ORDINALS	
28.	duodētrīgintā		duodētrīcēsīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā		ūndētrīcēsīmus
30.	trīgintā		trīcēsīmus
40.	quadrāgintā		quadrāgēsīmus
50.	quīnquāgintā		quīnquāgēsīmus
60.	sexāgintā		sexāgēsīmus
70.	septuāgintā		septuāgēsīmus
80.	octōgintā		octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum		centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	{	centēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a		ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī		trecentēsīmus
400.	quadrīngentī		quadrīngentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī		quīngentēsīmus
600.	sescentī		sēscentēsīmus
700.	septīngentī		septīngentēsīmus
800.	octīngentī		octīngentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī		nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mīlle		mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīllia		bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīllia		centiēs mīllēsīmus

PRONOUNS

511. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)				REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.)		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	meī	{ nostrum, nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

512.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. idem	eādem	īdem		{ eīdem īdem	eaedem	eādem
GEN. eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		{ eōrun- dem	eārun- dem	eōrun- dem
DAT. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		{ eīdem īdem	eīdem īdem	eīdem īdem
ACC. eundem	eandem	īdem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL. eōdem	eādem	eōdem		{ eīdem īdem	eīdem īdem	eīdem īdem

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	
GEN. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum.	
DAT. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	
ACC. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	
ABL. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	

513.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
GEN. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
DAT. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
ACC. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
ABL. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

514.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM. quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae	
GEN. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
DAT. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
ACC. quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae	
ABL. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

515.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

NOM.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

516. FIRST CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ā*PRIN. PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** — *love*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		<i>I am loved, am being loved</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris, re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur
<i>I was loving, loved, did love</i>		<i>IMPERFECT I was loved, was being loved</i>	
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur
<i>I shall love</i>		<i>FUTURE I shall be loved</i>	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur
<i>I have loved, loved</i>		<i>PERFECT I have been loved, was loved</i>	
amāvī	amāvimus	amātus sum	amātī sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, ēre	est	sunt
<i>I had loved</i>		<i>PLUPERFECT I had been loved</i>	
amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
amāverat	amāverant	erat	erant
<i>I shall have loved</i>		<i>FUTURE PERFECT I shall have been loved</i>	
amāverō	amāverimus	amātus erō	amātī erimus
amāveris	amāveritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
amāverit	amāverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

ACTIVE

Singular

amārem

amārēs

amāret

Plural

amārēmus

amārētis

amārent

IMPERFECT

Singular

amārer

amārēris, re

amārētur

PASSIVE

Plural

amārēmur

amārēmini

amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim

amāvcrīmus

amāveris

amāveritis

amāverit

amāverint

amātus sim

(a, um) sis

sit

amātī sīmus

(ae, a) sītis

sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem

amāvissēmus

amāvissēs

amāvissētis

amāvisset

amāvissent

amātus essem

(a, um) essēs

esset

amātī essēmus

(ae, a) essētis

essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

 2. amā, love
thou

 2. amāte, love
ye

 2. amāre, be thou
loved

 2. amāmini, be
ye loved

FUTURE

 2. amātō, thou
shalt love

 2. amātōte, you
shall love

 2. amātor, thou
shalt be loved

 2. ———
3. amantor, they
shall be loved

 3. amātō, he
shall love

 3. amantō, they
shall love

 3. amātor, he
shall be loved

INFINITIVE

amāre, to love

PRESENT

amārī, to be loved

 amātūrus (a, um) esse, to be
about to love

FUTURE

 amātum irī, to be about to be
loved

amāvisse, to have loved

PERFECT

 amātus (a, um) esse, to have
been loved

PARTICIPLES

amāns, antis, loving

PRESENT

 amātūrus, a, um, about to
love

FUTURE

 GER. amandus, a, um, to be
loved

PERFECT

 amātus, a, um, having been
loved, loved

GERUND

GEN. amandī, of loving

ACC. amandum, loving

DAT. amandō, for loving

ABL. amandō, by loving

SUPINE

amātum

amātū

517. SECOND CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ē*PRIN. PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** — *advise*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE
		PRESENT		
<i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		<i>I am advised, am being advised</i>		
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur	
monēs	monētis	monēris, re	monēmini	
monet	monent	monētur	monentur	
<i>I was advising, advised, did advise</i>		IMPERFECT	<i>I was advised, was being advised</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur	
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, re	monēbāmini	
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur	
<i>I shall advise</i>		FUTURE	<i>I shall be advised</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur	
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, re	monēbimini	
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur	
<i>I have advised, advised</i>		PERFECT	<i>I have been advised, I was advised</i>	
monuī	monuimus	monitus sum	monitī sumus	
monuistī	monuistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis	
monuit	monuērunt, ēre	est	sunt	
<i>I had advised</i>		PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been advised</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus eram	monitī erāmus	
monuerās	monuerātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis	
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant	
<i>I shall have advised</i>		FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been advised</i>	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus erō	monitī erimus	
monueris	monueritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis	
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt	

SUBJUNCTIVE

		PRESENT	
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

PASSIVE

PERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

PLUPERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monuissē	monuissēm
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. monē, <i>ad-</i> <i>vice thou</i>	2. monēte, <i>ad-</i> <i>vice ye</i>	2. monēre, <i>be</i> <i>thou advised</i>	2. monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i>
---	---	---	--------------------------------------

FUTURE

2. monētō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt advise</i>	2. monētōte, <i>you</i> <i>shall advise</i>	2. & 3. monētor, <i>thou shalt (he</i> <i>shall) be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>	2. ——— 3. monentor, <i>they shall be</i> <i>advised</i>
---	--	---	--

INFINITIVE

monēre, <i>to advise</i>	PRESENT	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>
monitūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to advise</i>	FUTURE	monitum īrī, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>advised</i>
monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>	PERFECT	monitus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been advised</i>

PARTICIPLES

monēns, entis, <i>advising</i>	PRESENT	———
monitūrus, a, um, <i>about to</i> <i>advise</i>	FUTURE	GER. monendus, a, um, <i>to</i> <i>be advised</i>
———	PERFECT	monitus, a, um, <i>having been</i> <i>advised, advised</i>

GERUND

GEN. monendī, <i>of advising</i>	ACC. monendum, <i>advising</i>
DAT. monendō, <i>for advising</i>	ABL. monendō, <i>by advising</i>

SUPINE

monitum

monitū

518. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *e*PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus* — *lead*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I lead, am leading, do lead</i>		PRESENT	<i>I am led, am being led</i>		
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		
dūcō	dūcīmus	dūcor	dūcīmur		
dūcis	dūcītis	dūceris, re	dūcīmīnī		
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur		
<i>I was leading, led, did lead</i>		IMPERFECT	<i>I was led, was being led</i>		
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur		
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris, re	dūcēbāmīnī		
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur		
<i>I shall lead</i>		FUTURE	<i>I shall be led</i>		
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur		
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris, re	dūcēmīnī		
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur		
<i>I have led, led</i>		PERFECT	<i>I have been led, was led</i>		
dūxī	dūxīmus	ductus sum	ductī	sumus	
dūxistī	dūxistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a)	estis	
dūxit	dūxērunt, ēre	est		sunt	
<i>I had led</i>		PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been led</i>		
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus eram	ductī	erāmus	
dūxerās	dūxerātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a)	erātis	
dūxerat	dūxerant	erat		erant	
<i>I shall have led</i>		FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been led</i>		
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus erō	ductī	erimus	
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a)	eritis	
dūxerit	dūxerint	erit		erunt	

SUBJUNCTIVE

		PRESENT	
<i>dūcam</i>	<i>dūcāmus</i>	<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcāmur</i>
<i>dūcās</i>	<i>dūcātis</i>	<i>dūcāris, re</i>	<i>dūcāmīnī</i>
<i>dūcat</i>	<i>dūcant</i>	<i>dūcātur</i>	<i>dūcantur</i>
		IMPERFECT	
<i>dūcerem</i>	<i>dūcerēmus</i>	<i>dūcerer</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>
<i>dūcerēs</i>	<i>dūcerētis</i>	<i>dūcerēris, re</i>	<i>dūcerēmīnī</i>
<i>dūceret</i>	<i>dūcerent</i>	<i>dūcerētur</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>

ACTIVE

PERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus sim	ducti sīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sitis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
dūxissem	dūxissemus	ductus essem	ducti essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
dūxisset	dūxisset	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. dūc, ¹ lead thou	2. dūcite, lead ye	2. dūcere, be thou led	2. dūciminī, be ye led
-----------------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

FUTURE

2. dūcitō, thou shalt lead	2. dūcitōte, ye shall lead	2. dūcitor, thou shalt be led	2. ———
3. dūcitō, he shall lead	3. dūcuntō, they shall lead	3. dūcitor, he shall be led	3. dūcuntor, they shall be led

INFINITIVE

dūcere, to lead	PRESENT	dūcī, to be led
ductūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to lead	FUTURE	ductum irī, to be about to be led
dūxisse, to have led	PERFECT	ductus (a, um) esse, to have been led

PARTICIPLES

dūcēns, entis, leading	PRESENT	—————
ductūrus, a, um, about to lead	FUTURE	GER. dūcendus, a, um, to be led
—————	PERFECT	ductus, having been led, led

GERUND

GEN. dūcendī, of leading	ACC. dūcendum, leading
DAT. dūcendō, for leading	ABL. dūcendō, by leading

SUPINE

ductum

ductū

¹ dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have as present imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in -e, as gerō, imperative gere.

519. FOURTH CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *i*PRIN. PARTS: *audiō, ire, audīvī, audītus* — *hear*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>		<i>I am heard, am being heard</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audīmur</i>
<i>audīs</i>	<i>auditis</i>	<i>audiris, re</i>	<i>audīmini</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>auditur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>
<i>I was hearing, heard, did hear</i>		<i>I was heard, was being heard</i>	
<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbāris, re</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>
<i>I shall hear</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>
<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiētis</i>	<i>audiēris, re</i>	<i>audiēmini</i>
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audient</i>	<i>audiētur</i>	<i>audientur</i>
<i>I have heard, heard</i>		<i>I have been heard, I was heard</i>	
<i>audīvī</i>	<i>audivimus</i>	<i>audītus sum</i>	<i>audītī sumus</i>
<i>audivistī</i>	<i>audivistis</i>	<i>(a, um) es</i>	<i>(ae, a) estis</i>
<i>audivit</i>	<i>audivērunt, ēre</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>
<i>I had heard</i>		<i>I had been heard</i>	
<i>audiveram</i>	<i>audiverāmus</i>	<i>audītus eram</i>	<i>audītī erāmus</i>
<i>audiverās</i>	<i>audiverātis</i>	<i>(a, um) erās</i>	<i>(ae, a) erātis</i>
<i>audiverat</i>	<i>audiverant</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>I shall have heard</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
<i>audiverō</i>	<i>audiverimus</i>	<i>audītus erō</i>	<i>audītī erimus</i>
<i>audiveris</i>	<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>(a, um) eris</i>	<i>(ae, a) eritis</i>
<i>audiverit</i>	<i>audiverint</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiāmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiātis</i>	<i>audiāris, re</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiant</i>	<i>audiātur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, re	audīrēmini
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
PERFECT			
audīverim	audīverimus	audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
audīverit	audīverint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audīvisēs	audīvisētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
audīvisset	audīvisset	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. audī, <i>hear</i> <i>thou</i>	2. audīte, <i>hear</i> <i>ye</i>	2. audīre, <i>be</i> <i>thou heard</i>	2. audīmini, <i>be</i> <i>ye heard</i>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	---	---

FUTURE

2. audītō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt hear</i>	2. audītōte, <i>you</i> <i>shall hear</i>	2. audītor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be heard</i>	2. ———
3. audītō, <i>he</i> <i>shall hear</i>	3. audiuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall hear</i>	3. audītor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be heard</i>	3. audiuntor, <i>they shall be</i> <i>heard</i>

INFINITIVE

audīre, <i>to hear</i>	PRESENT	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>
audītūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to hear</i>	FUTURE	audītum īrī, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>heard</i>
audīvisse, <i>to have heard</i>	PERFECT	audītus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

audiēns, ientis, <i>hearing</i>	PRESENT	———
audītūrus, a, um, <i>about to</i> <i>hear</i>	FUTURE	GER. audiendus, a, um, <i>to</i> <i>be heard</i>
———	PERFECT	audītus, <i>having been heard,</i> <i>heard</i>

GERUND

GEN. audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	ACC. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
DAT. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	ABL. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE

audītum

audītū

520. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *iō*PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I take, am taking, do take</i>		<i>I am taken, am being taken</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis, re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>I was taking, took, did take</i>		<i>I was taken, was being taken</i>	
<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāris, re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>

<i>I shall take</i>		<i>I shall be taken</i>	
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris, re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

PERFECT

<i>I have taken, took</i>		<i>I have been taken, I was taken</i>			
<i>cēpī</i>	<i>cēpimus</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>captī</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>cēpistī</i>	<i>cēpistis</i>	<i>(a, um)</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>(ae, a)</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>cēpit</i>	<i>cēperunt, ēre</i>		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

<i>I had taken</i>		<i>I had been taken</i>			
<i>cēperam</i>	<i>cēperāmus</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>captī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>cēperās</i>	<i>cēperātis</i>	<i>(a, um)</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>(ae, a)</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>cēperat</i>	<i>cēperant</i>		<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>I shall have taken</i>		<i>I shall have been taken</i>			
<i>cēperō</i>	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>captī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>cēperis</i>	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>(a, um)</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>(ae, a)</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>cēperit</i>	<i>cēperint</i>		<i>erit</i>		<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiamus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiamur</i>
<i>capias</i>	<i>capiatīs</i>	<i>capiaris, re</i>	<i>capiamini</i>
<i>capiat</i>	<i>capiant</i>	<i>capiātur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

caperem

caperēmus

caperer

caperēmur

caperēs

caperētis

caperēris, re

caperēmini

caperet

caperent

caperētur

caperentur

PERFECT

cēperim

cēperimus

captus sim

capti simus

cēperis

cēperitis

(a, um) sis

(ae, a) sitis

cēperit

cēperint

sit

sint

PLUPERFECT

cēpissēm

cēpissēmus

captus essem

capti essēmus

cēpissēs

cēpissētis

(a, um) essēs

(ae, a) essētis

cēpisset

cēpissent

esset

essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. cape, *take*
thou

2. capite, *take*
ye

2. capere, *bethou*
taken

2. capimini, *be*
ye taken

FUTURE

2. capitō, *thou*
shalt take

2. capitōte, *ye*
shall take

2. capitor, *thou*
shalt be taken

2. ———
they shall be

3. capitō, *he*
shall take

3. capiuntō, *they*
shall take

3. capitor, *he*
shall be taken

3. capiuntor,
taken

INFINITIVE

capere, *to take*

PRESENT

capī, *to be taken*

captūrus (a, um) esse, *to be*
about to take

FUTURE

captum irī, *to be about to be*
taken

cēpisse, *to have taken*

PERFECT

captus (a, um) esse, *to have*
been taken

PARTICIPLES

capiēns, ientis, *taking*

PRESENT

captūrus, a, um, *about to take*

FUTURE

GER. capiendus, a, um, *to*
be taken

PERFECT

captus, a, um, *having been*
taken, taken

GERUND

GEN. capiendī, *of taking*

ACC. capiendum, *taking*

DAT. capiendō, *for taking*

ABL. capiendō, *by taking*

SUPINE

captum

captū

IRREGULAR VERBS

521. PRIN. PARTS: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be*

INDICATIVE

<i>Singular</i>	PRESENT	<i>Plural</i>
<i>sum, I am</i>		<i>sumus, we are</i>
<i>es, you are</i>		<i>estis, you are</i>
<i>est (he, she, it) is</i>		<i>sunt, they are</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, you were</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

FUTURE

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, you will be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

PERFECT

<i>fuī, I have been, was</i>	<i>fuimus, we have been, were</i>
<i>fuistī, you have been, were</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been, were</i>
<i>fuit, he has been, was</i>	<i>fuērunt</i> } <i>they have been, were</i> <i>fuēre</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

IMPERFECT

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

sim

simus

essem

essēmus

sis

sitis

essēs

essētis

sit

sint

esset

essent

PERFECT

PLUPERFECT

fuerim

fuerīmus

fuissem

fuissēmus

fueris

fuerītis

fuissēs

fuissētis

fuerit

fuerint

fuisset

fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

FUTURE

es, be thou

estō, thou shalt be

este, be ye

estō, he shall be

estōte, ye shall be

suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

PRES. *esse, to be*

—

PERF. *fuisse, to have been*

—

FUT. *futūrus esse (fore),
to be about to be*

futūrus, about to be

522. PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse, potui, am able, can**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

PRES. *I am able, can*

possum

possumus

possim

possīmus

potes

potestis

possīs

possītis

potest

possunt

possit

possint

IMPF. *I was able, could*

poteram

poterāmus

possem

possēmus

FUT. *I shall be able*

poterō

poterimus

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerimus

PLUP. *I had been able*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō potuerimus

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns (used as adjective), *powerful*

523.

PRIN. PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, benefit**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I benefit</i>				
	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMPF.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfui	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

524. PRIN. PARTS :

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissē	nōluissē	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī	—
		nōlīte	
FUT.	—	[nōlītō, etc.]	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	vellē	nōllē	māllē
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

525. PRIN. PARTS : eō, ire, iī, itum, go

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam, ībās, ībat, etc.		īrem	{ itō.	ītōte
				{ itō	euntō
FUT.	ībō, ībis, ībit, etc.		—		
PERF.	iī, istī, iit, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

INFINITIVE

PRES.	īre
PERF.	īsse
FUT.	itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

īēns, euntis
itum
itūrus

GERUND

GEN.	eundī
DAT.	eundō
ACC.	eundum
ABL.	eundō

SUPINE

itum

526.

 PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	——	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>fīte</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	——			
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>			
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>		
FUT.	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>		——		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō</i>				

	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES
PRES.	<i>fieri</i>	GER.	<i>faciendus</i>
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF.	<i>factus</i>
FUT.	<i>factum iri</i>		

 527. PRIN. PARTS : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry*

INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i> <i>Plural</i>
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i> <i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, re</i> <i>feriminī</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i> <i>feruntur</i>
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferēbam</i>		<i>ferēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>feram, ēs, etc.</i>		<i>ferar, ēris, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>tulī</i>		<i>lātus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>		<i>lātus eram</i>
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	—
FUT.	lāturus	GER. ferendus
	—	PERF. lātus

GERUND

GEN.	ferendī
DAT.	ferendō
ACC.	ferendum
ABL.	ferendō

SUPINE

—
—
lātum
lātū

528.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS : **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge, entreat**
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
potior, potirī, potītus sum, get possession of

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potīris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
hortātū	veritū	secūtū	potītū

529. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
IMPF.	amātūrus	eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUT.	amātūrus	erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus	fuī, <i>I have been or was about to love</i>
PLUP.	amātūrus	fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
F. P.	amātūrus	fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	sim
IMPF.	amātūrus	essem
PERF.	amātūrus	fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus	fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus	esse
PERF.	amātūrus	fuisse

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRES.	monitūrus	sum, <i>I am about to advise</i>
	ductūrus	sum, <i>I am about to lead</i>
	captūrus	sum, <i>I am about to take</i>
	auditūrus	sum, <i>I am about to hear, etc.</i>

530. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus	sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPF.	amandus	eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus	erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE — *Continued*

- PERF. **amandus** fui, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. **amandus** fueram, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. **amandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. **amandus** sim
 IMPF. **amandus** essem
 PERF. **amandus** fuerim
 PLUP. **amandus** fuissem

INFINITIVE

- PRES. **amandus** esse, *to have to be loved*
 PERF. **amandus** fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. **monendus** sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
 dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
 capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
 audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc.*

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus; maximus, summus, tantus*. [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in*; but with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the locative. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

After comparatives with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The measure of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case. — Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement. — A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive. — Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually sub-

junctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam*; wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i>	ablative.	<i>loc.</i>	locative.
<i>acc.</i>	accusative.	<i>m.</i>	masculine.
<i>adj.</i>	adjective.	<i>n., neut.</i>	neuter.
<i>adv.</i>	adverb.	<i>neg.</i>	negative.
<i>comp.</i>	comparative.	<i>nom.</i>	nominative.
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction.	<i>num.</i>	numeral.
<i>dat.</i>	dative.	<i>part.</i>	participle.
<i>def.</i>	defective.	<i>pass.</i>	passive.
<i>dem.</i>	demonstrative.	<i>perf.</i>	perfect.
<i>dep.</i>	deponent.	<i>pl., plur.</i>	plural.
<i>determ.</i>	determinative.	<i>pr.</i>	proper.
<i>dim.</i>	diminutive.	<i>prep.</i>	preposition.
<i>f.</i>	feminine.	<i>pres.</i>	present.
<i>fut.</i>	future.	<i>pron.</i>	pronoun.
<i>gen.</i>	genitive.	<i>refl.</i>	reflexive.
<i>impers.</i>	impersonal.	<i>rel.</i>	relative.
<i>indecl.</i>	indeclinable.	<i>sing.</i>	singular.
<i>indef.</i>	indefinite.	<i>subjv.</i>	subjunctive.
<i>interrog.</i>	interrogative.	<i>subst.</i>	substantive.
<i>intr.</i>	intransitive.	<i>sup.</i>	superlative.
<i>irr.</i>	irregular.	<i>tr.</i>	transitive.

VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- ā, ab, prep. w. abl.,** from, by, with, at, on, in.
- abditus.** *See* **abdō.**
- abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus** (**ab + dō**, place), *tr.*, put away, conceal.
- abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus, tr.**, throw, hurl.
- ablātus.** *See* **auferō.**
- absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, intr.**, be away, be distant, be absent.
- ac.** *See* **atque.**
- Acca, ae, f., pr. name,** Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.
- accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus** (**ad + cēdō**), *intr.*, go near, come near, approach; *w. ad and acc.*
- accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus** (**ad + candeō**, glow), *tr.*, set on fire; **accēnsus**, burning.
- accidō, ere, accidī, —** (**ad + cadō**), *intr.*, happen.
- acciō, ire, accivī, accitus** (**ad + cieō**, set in motion), *tr.*, summon, invite.
- accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus** (**ad + capiō**), *tr.*, receive; suffer, undergo.
- acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**ad + clāmō**, cry), *tr.*, shout, cry out.
- acclivis, e** (**ad + clivus**, slope), rising.
- acclivitās, ātis** (**acclivis**), *f.*, ascent, slope.
- accurrō, ere, accurrī, accursum** (**ad + currō**, run), *intr.*, run up, hasten to.
- accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus** (**ad + causa**), *tr.*, accuse, reproach.
- ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
- ācerrimē.** *See* **ācritēr.**
- aciēs, aciēi, f.**, edge; line of battle.
- ācritēr** (**ācer**), *adv.*, sharply, eagerly, fiercely; *comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē.**
- āctus.** *See* **agō.**
- ad, prep. w. acc.,** to, toward, at, near, against; according to; *w. numerals*, about.
- addō, addere, addidī, additus** (**ad + dō**, place), *tr.*, add.
- addūcō, ere, addūxī, adductus** (**ad + dūcō**), *tr.*, lead to, lead, influence.
- adeō, adire, adiī, aditum** (**ad + eō**), *intr.*, go to, approach.
- adficiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus** (**ad + faciō**), *tr.*, affect; **poenā —**, punish.
- adhibeō, ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus** (**ad + habeō**), *tr.*, call in, use.
- aditus, ūs** (**adeō**), *m.*, approach, access.

- administrō, āre, āvī, ātus** (ad + ministrō, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.
adolēscō, ere, adolēvī, adultus (ad + olēscō, grow), *intr.*, grow up.
adorior, īrī, adortus sum (ad + orior), *intr.*, attack.
adōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + ōrnō, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.
adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus (ad + sum), *intr.*, be present, aid.
Aduatuci, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
adolēscēns, entis (adolēscō), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.
adveniō, īre, advēnī, adventum (ad + veniō), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.
adventus, ūs (adveniō), *m.*, arrival, approach.
adversus, a, um (advertō, turn to), in front, opposite; **adversō colle**, up the hill.
adversus (adversus), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.
aedificium, ī (aedificō), *n.*, building.
aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus (aedis + faciō), *tr.*, build, construct.
aedis or aedēs, is, f., temple; *pl.*, **aedēs rēgiae**, palace.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.
aegrē (aeger), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
aegritūdō, inis (aeger), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.
aequāliter (aequālis, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.
aequus, a, um, equal, favorable.
aestās, ātis, f., summer.
aetās, ātis, f., age.
ager, agrī, m., field, land, territory.
agger, aggeris (ad + gerō), *m.*, mound, agger.
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum (ad + gradior, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
agmen, agminis (agō), *n.*, army on the march; **prīum agmen**, van; **novissimum agmen**, rear.
agnōscō, ere, agnōvī, agnitus (ad + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize.
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, tr., drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; **triumphum agere**, celebrate a triumph.
agricola, ae (ager + colō), *m.*, farmer.
aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, def., say.
Alba or Alba Longa, ae, f., an ancient Latin town.
Albānus, a, um (Alba), Alban; *as subst.*, **Albānus, ī, m.**, an Alban.
albus, a, um, white.
aliēnus, a, um (alius), another's, unfavorable, strange.
aliquis and aliquī, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, indef. pron., some one, any one.
alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . some, some . . . others; **aliī aliam in partem**, some in one direction, some in another.
Allobrogēs, um, m., a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
alō, ere, alui, altus, tr., nourish, strengthen.
altāria, ium, n. pl., altar.
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two), another, second.
altitūdō, inis (altus), *f.*, height, depth.
altus, a, um (alō), high, deep.
alveus, ī, m., basket, trough.

Ambiānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Belgian tribe.
amīcitiā, ae (amīcus), *f.*, friendship, alliance.

amīcus, ī (amō), *m.*, friend, ally.

āmittō, ere, āmīsī. āmissus (ā + mittō), *tr.*, lose.

amō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, love, like.

āmoveō, ēre, āmōvī, āmōtus (ā + moveō), *tr.*, take away, remove.

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātus (amplus + faciō), *tr.*, increase, extend.

amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.

Amūlius, ī, *m.*, king of Alba Longa.

ancile, is, *n.*, a small oval shield.

angustiae, ārum (angustus), *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow pass. [*steep.*]

angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted;

animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus (animum + advertō, turn toward), *tr.*, turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere in**, punish.

animal, ālis (anima, life), *n.*, animal.

animus, ī, *m.*, mind, disposition, courage, spirit; **in animō esse, in animō habēre**, have in mind, intend.

annus, ī, *m.*, year.

ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before.

antepōnō, ere, anteposui, antepositus (ante + pōnō), *tr.*, put before.

antequam, *conj.*, before, until.

antīquus (antīquus), *adv.*, in former times, anciently.

antīquus, a, um, old, ancient.

ānulus, ī, *m.*, ring.

anxious, a, um (angō, vex), troubled, anxious.

aperiō, īre, aperui, apertus, *tr.*, open.

apertus, a, um (aperiō), open.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, call, name.

Appius, ī, *m.*, a Roman surname.

apprehendō, ere, apprehendī, apprehēsus (ad +prehendō, seize), *tr.*, lay hold of, seize.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum (ad + propinquus), *intr. w. dat.*, approach, come near.

apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, in the presence of, near.

aqua, ae, *f.*, water. [*Gaul.*]

Aquilēia, ae, *f.*, a town of Cisalpine
aquilō, ōnis, *m.*, the north wind.

Aquitānia, ae, *f.*, a division of southern Gaul.

Aquitānus, ī, *m.*, an Aquitanian.

āra, ae, *f.*, altar.

Arar, Araris, *m.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbiter, arbitri, *m.*, witness.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum (arbiter), *intr.*, think, consider, suppose.

arceō, ēre, arcui, —, *tr.*, shut up, hinder, prevent.

Ariovistus, ī, *m.*, a German king.

arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.

armilla, ae, *f.*, bracelet.

armō, āre, āvī, ātus (arma), *tr.*, arm, equip.

arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, plow.

ars, artis, *f.*, art.

artūs, artuum, *m. pl.*, joints.

arx, arcis (arceō), *f.*, stronghold, citadel.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.

āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), *f.*, shrewdness, cunning.

asylum, ī, *n.*, asylum, place of refuge.
at, *conj.*, but, yet.

Athēnae, ārum, *f.*, Athens.

atque, ac, *conj.*, and.

Atrebās, ātis, *m.*, one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ere, attigī, attactus (ad + tangō, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on. [astounded.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, auctōritās, ātis (augeō), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (audāx), *adv.*, boldly, courageously; *comp.* audācius; *sup.* audācissimē.

audāx, *adj.*, bold.

Audecumborius, ī, *m.*, an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *intr.*, dare.

audiō, īre, audīvī, auditus, *tr.*, hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō), *tr.*, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *tr.*, increase.

augurium, ī (augur, soothsayer), *n.*, divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (aurum, gold), golden.

auspiciū, ī (avis + speciō, look), *n.*, divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. *See* audeō.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, however.

auxilium, ī, *n.*, help, aid.

Aventinus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āvertī, āversus (ab + vertō), *tr.*, turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

avus, ī, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um (bellum), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, ī, *n.*, war; bellum inferre, make war; bellum gerere, wage war.

bene (bonus), *adv.*, well; *comp.* melius, *sup.* optimē.

beneficiū, ī (bene + faciō), *n.*, favor, service.

benīgnē (benīgnus, kind), *adv.*, kindly.

bibō, ere, bibī, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetii.

bonus, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (brevis), *f.*, shortness.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *tr.*, fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (caedō), *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, ī, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 100–44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

campus, ī, *m.*, plain.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, ī, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captīvus, ī (capiō), *m.*, captive.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

cārē (cārus), *adv.*, dearly.

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *intr. w. abl.*, be without, be in need of, lack.

carpentum, *ī, n.*, two-wheeled carriage.

carrus, *ī, m.*, wagon, cart.

Carthāgō, *inis, f.*, a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.

cārus, *a, um*, dear.

casa, *ae, f.*, hut.

Cassius, *ī, m.*, a Roman name.

castellum, *ī (dim. of castrum), n.*, fort, redoubt.

Casticus, *ī, m.*, a Sequanian chief.

castra, *ōrum, n. pl.*, camp.

cāsus, *ūs (cadō), m.*, falling, chance, misfortune.

catulus, *ī, m.*, cub.

causa, *ae, f.*, reason, cause, case; **quā dē causā**, why, for this reason; **causā**, *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for, on account of; **causam dicere**, plead a case.

cavea, *ae (cavus, hollow), f.*, cage.

cecidī. See **cadō**.

cēdō, *ere, cessī, cessum, intr.*, go, yield, retire, retreat.

celer, *celeris, celere*, swift, quick.

celeritās, *ātis (celer), f.*, speed, quickness.

celeriter (celer), *adv.*, quickly, swiftly; *comp. celerius; sup. celerrimē*.

Celtae, *ārum, m.*, Celts, one of the three great peoples of Gaul.

cēna, *ae, f.*, meal, dinner.

centum, *indecl.*, hundred.

centuria, *ae (centum), f.*, a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred; century.

centuriō, *ōnis (centuria), m.*, centurion, commander of a century.

certāmen, *inis (certō, contend), n.*, contest.

certus, *a, um (cernō, perceive)*, certain, appointed; **certiōrem facere**, inform.

cēterī, *ae, a, pl.*, the rest, the others.

cibus, *ī, m.*, food.

Cimbri, *ōrum, m.*, a Germanic tribe.

circā, *prep. w. acc.*, around, about.

circiter, *prep. w. acc.*, about, nearly.

circum, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, about, around.

circumdō, **circumdare**, **circumdedī**, **circumdatus (circum + dō)**, *tr.*, surround.

circumiciō, *ere, circumiēcī*, **circum- iectus (circum + iaciō)**, *tr.*, throw about, place around.

circumveniō, *īre, circumvēnī*, **circum- ventus (circum + veniō)**, *tr.*, come around, surround.

cis, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.

citerior, **citerius**, hither.

citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.

cīvicus, *a, um (cīvis)*, civic.

cīvis, *is, m. and f.*, citizen. [state.

cīvitās, *ātis (cīvis), f.*, citizenship,

clādēs, *is, f.*, disaster, destruction.

clāmitō, *āre, āvī, ātus (clāmō, cry out), tr.*, cry out, shout.

clāmor, *ōris (clāmō, cry out), m.*, shouting, cry.

classis, *is, f.*, fleet.

Claudia, *ae, f.*, sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.

Claudius, *ī, m.*, a Roman family name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher**, consul 249 B.C.

claudō, *ere, clausī, clausus, tr.*, shut, close.

clēmētia, *ae (clēmēns, mild), f.*, kindness, mildness.

cliēns, **clientis**, *m. and f.*, dependent, vassal.

coepī, **coepisse**, **coeptūrus sum**, *def.*, began.

- cōgnōscō**, *ere*, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitus** (*con* + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize, learn, discover, ascertain.
- cōgō**, *ere*, **coēgī**, **coāctus** (*con* + agō), drive together, collect, force, compel.
- cohors**, **cohortis**, *f.*, cohort (the tenth part of a legion).
- cohortor**, **ārī**, **ātus sum** (*con* + hortor), *tr.*, exhort, encourage.
- collis**, *is*, *m.*, hill.
- colō**, *ere*, **coluī**, **cultus**, *tr.*, cultivate, worship.
- commeātus**, **ūs**, *m.*, provisions, supplies.
- comminus** (*con* + manus), *adv.*, hand to hand.
- committō**, *ere*, **commisī**, **commissus** (*con* + mittō), *tr.*, commit, intrust; join, begin (battle).
- commodē** (*commodus*, useful), *adv.*, advantageously, easily.
- commoveō**, **ēre**, **commōvī**, **commōtus** (*con* + moveō), *tr.*, to move, influence, disturb.
- compār**, **comparis** (*con* + pār), fitting, suitable.
- comparō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*con* + parō), *tr.*, prepare, provide.
- complēō**, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētus** (*con* + plēō, fill), *tr.*, fill up, complete.
- complūrēs**, *a*, many, very many, a great many.
- comprehendō**, *ere*, **comprehendī**, **comprehēnsus** (*con* + prehēdō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.
- con.** See *cum*.
- concēdō**, *ere*, **concessī**, **concessum** (*con* + cēdō), *intr.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.
- concidō**, *ere*, **concidī**, — (*con* + cadō), *intr.*, fall, be killed.
- concidō**, *ere*, **concidī**, **concīsus** (*con* + caedō, slay), *tr.*, cut down, kill.
- conciliō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, gain, win, procure.
- concilium**, **ī**, *n.*, assembly, council.
- condemnō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*con* + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.
- condiciō**, **ōnis** (**condicō**, agree), *f.*, agreement, proposal, terms.
- condō**, *ere*, **condidī**, **conditus** (*con* + dō, put), *tr.*, found, establish.
- condūcō**, *ere*, **condūxī**, **conductus** (*con* + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.
- cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **conlātus** (*con* + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; **sē cōnferre**, betake one's self, go.
- cōnfertus**, *a*, **um** (**cōnferciō**, crowd), crowded, dense.
- cōnficiō**, *ere*, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectus** (*con* + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, wear out.
- cōnfirmō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (*con* + firmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, establish, assure, declare, encourage.
- cōnflīgō**, *ere*, **cōnflīxī**, **cōnflīctum**, *intr.*, contend, fight.
- cōnfugiō**, *ere*, **cōnfūgī**, —, *intr.*, flee.
- congressus**, **ūs** (**congregior**, meet), *m.*, meeting.
- congruō**, *ere*, **congruī**, —, *intr.*, agree, tally.
- coniciō**, *ere*, **coniēcī**, **coniectus** (*con* + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.
- coniungō**, *ere*, **coniūnxī**, **coniūctus** (*con* + iungō), *tr.*, join.
- coniūnx**, **coniugis** (**coniungō**), *f.*, wife.

coniūratiō, ōnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.

coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), *m.*, conspirator.

coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.

conlātus. See cōnferō.

conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.

conloquium, ī (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try.

cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.

cōnscrībō, ere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus (con + scrībō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.

cōnsentiō, īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.

cōnserō, ere, cōnseruī, cōnseruus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve.

cōnsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, consider, examine, look at closely.

cōnsīdō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con + sīdō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.

cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), *n.*, plan, advice, prudence.

cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.

cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, — (con +

sistō, place), *intr.*, take a stand, hold a position, stop.

cōnspectus, ūs (cōnspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.

cōnspiciō, ere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.

cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.

cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.

cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuetus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, inis (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., consul.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *tr.*, ask advice, consult.

contendō, ere, contendī, contentum (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.

contentiō, ōnis (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.

continenter (contineō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.

contineō, ēre, continuī, contentus (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.

cōntiō, ōnis (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., against, opposite.

contulī. See cōnferō.

cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.

conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers.* **convenit**, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus (con + vertō), tr., turn (about), change; **signa convertere,** face about.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + vocō), tr., call together, summon.

coorior, irī, coortus sum (con + orior), intr., rise, break out.

cōpia, ae, f., supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.

Corinthus, ī, f., Corinth.

Cornēlius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *See* Cossus.

cornū, ūs, n., horn, flank, wing.

corōna, ae, f., crown.

corpus, corporis, n., body.

corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall), intr., fall, be slain.

Cossus, ī, m., Aulus Cornēlius Cossus, consul 343 B.C.

cottidiānus, a, um (cottidiē), daily.

cottidiē, adv., daily.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, tr. and intr., w. dat., believe, trust.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., burn.

creō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., appoint, choose.

Crētēs, Crētum, m. pl., Cretans.

crux, crucis, f., cross, gallows.

culpō, āre, āvī, ātus (culpa, fault), tr., blame.

cultus, see colō.

cum, prep. w. abl., with; *in composition,* con-, co-; *conj.,* when, since, although, because.

cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager.

cupiō, ere, cupīvī or cupiī, cupītus, tr., wish, desire, be eager for.

cūr, adv., why.

cūra, ae, f., care.

Curēs, Curium, f. pl., a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, f., senate

cursus, ūs (currō, run), m., course.

curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.

cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), f., guard.

cūstōdiō, īre, cūstōdivī, cūstōdītus (cūstōs, guard), tr., watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), f., condemnation.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., condemn, sentence.

dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.

dea, ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (dē + habeō), tr., owe; *with inf.,* ought.

decem, indecl., ten.

dēcernō, ere, dēcervī, dēcētus (dē + cernō, separate), tr., decide, decree.

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum (dē + certō, contend), intr., fight, contend.

Decius, ī, m., Pūblius Decius Mūs, consul 340 B.C.

dēclivis, e (dē + clivus, slope), sloping.

dēcervī. See dēcernō.

dēcurreō, ere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum (dē + currō, run), intr., run down, hasten down.

dēditiō, ōnis (dēdō), f., surrender.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēdītus (dē + dō), tr., give up, surrender.

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, tr., defend, protect.

dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), m., defender.

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus (dē + ferō), tr., carry off; bestow, confer.

dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (dē + faciō), tr. and intr., fail, be lacking, revolt. [thereafter.

deinceps, adv., successively, next,

deinde (dē + inde), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, **dēlābī**, **dēlāpsus sum** (dē + lābor, slip), *intr.*, glide or fall down.

dēlectō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, please, delight.

dēligō, **ere**, **dēlēgī**, **dēlēctus** (dē + legō, collect), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, **ōrum**, *m.*, Delphi.

dēmittō, **ere**, **dēmīsī**, **dēmīssus** (dē + mittō), *tr.*, send down, let down; **sē dēmittere**, jump.

dēmōnstrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (dē + mōnstrō, show), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.

dēpōnō, **ere**, **dēposuī**, **dēpositus** (dē + pōnō), *tr.*, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, **ārī**, **ātus sum** (dē + populor), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, **ōris** (dēprecor, mediate), *m.*, intercessor; **eō dēprecātōre**, through his mediation.

dēscendō, **ere**, **dēscendī**, **dēscēsum** (dē + scandō, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscribō, **ere**, **dēscripsī**, **dēscriptus** (dē + scribō), *tr.*, describe.

dēsistō, **ere**, **dēstitī**, — (dē + sistō, stand), *intr.*, cease, leave off.

dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfuī**, **dēfutūrus** (dē + sum), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

deus, **ī**, *m.*, god.

dēvincō, **ere**, **dēvīcī**, **dēvictus** (dē + vincō), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvoveō, **ēre**, **dēvōvī**, **dēvōtus** (dē + voveō), *tr.*, vow, devote.

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum**, right; **dextra**, **ae**, *f.*, right hand.

dī-. See **dis-**.

dīcō, **ere**, **dīxī**, **dictus**, *tr.*, say, tell, speak; impose (a fine); plead.

dīēs, **ēī**, *m. and f.*, day.

difficilis, **e** (dis + facilis), difficult, hard.

difficultās, **ātis** (difficilis), *f.*, difficulty.

diligenter (diligō, esteem). *adv.*, carefully, attentively.

diligentia, **ae** (diligō, esteem), *f.*, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dīmētior, **īrī**, **dīmēnsus sum**, *tr.*, measure.

dīmicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *intr.*, fight, contend.

dīmittō, **ere**, **dīmīsī**, **dīmīssus** (dis + mittō), *tr.*, send off, dismiss, let go.

dīripiō, **ere**, **dīripuī**, **dīreptus** (dis + rapiō), *tr.*, lay waste, pillage, ravage.

dis-, **dī-**, *inseparable neg. prefix*, apart, not, un-.

discēdō, **ere**, **discessī**, **discessum** (dis + cēdō), *intr.*, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, **ī** (discō), *m.*, pupil.

discō, **ere**, **didicī**, —, *tr.*, learn.

discurrō, **ere**, **dis^(cu)currī**, **discursum** (dis + currō, run), *intr.*, run in different directions.

dissimilis, **e** (dis + similis), unlike, dissimilar.

dissimulō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (dissimilis), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.

distineō, **ēre**, **distinuī**, **distentus** (dis + teneō), *tr.*, keep apart.

distribuō, **ere**, **distribuī**, **distribūtus** (dis + tribuō, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time; *comp.* **diūtius**, *sup.* **diūtissimē**.

Dīviciācus, **ī**, *m.*, a chief of the Haedui.

dīvidō, **ere**, **dīvīsī**, **dīvīsus**, *tr.*, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *tr.*, give; poenās dare, suffer punishment.

doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, *tr.*, teach, inform. [by trickery.

dolōsē (dolus, trick), *adv.*, craftily, domesticus, a, um (domus), domestic; from their own country.

dominus, ī, *m.*, master, lord.

domus, ūs *or* ī, *f.*, house, home; domī, at home; domum, (to) home, homeward.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (dōnum), *tr.*, present, give.

dōnum, ī (dō), *n.*, gift.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

ducentī, ae, a (duo + centum), two hundred. [bring.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *tr.*, lead,

Duilius, ī, *m.*, Gāius Duilius, a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.

dum, *conj.*, while, until.

Dumnorix, īgis, *m.*, brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.

duodēvigintī, *indecl.*, eighteen.

dux, ducis (dūcō), *m.*, guide, leader, general.

E

ē. *See* ex.

ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus (ex + dō), *tr.*, give out, give birth to, bear.

edō, edere *or* ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, *tr.*, eat.

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus (ex + dūcō), *tr.*, lead out, lead.

efferrō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus (ex + ferrō), *tr.*, carry out.

effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (ex + fugiō), *tr. and intr.*, escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effusus (ex + fundō, pour), *tr.*, pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Egeria, ae, *f.*, a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. *See* agō.

ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *intr.*, go out, come forth.

eius. *See* is.

ēliciō, ere, ēlicuī, ēlicitus (ex + laciō, allure), *tr.*, lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), *tr.*, select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (ex + migrō, migrate), *intr.*, emigrate, remove.

enim, *conj.*, for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūntiō), *tr.*, announce, reveal.

eō, īre, īi, itum, *intr.*, go.

eō (is), *adv.*, there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (equus), *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalrymen.

equester, equestris, equestre (eques), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (eques), *m.*, cavalry.

equis, ī, *m.*, horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus (ex + rapiō), *tr.*, snatch away, save.

erō, eris, etc. *See* sum.

ēruptiō, ōnis (ērumpō, break forth), *f.*, breaking out, sally.

esse. *See* sum.

ēsse. *See* edō.

et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam (et + iam), *conj.*, besides, still,

Eurōpa, ae, *f.*, Europe. [even.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum (ex + vādō, go), *intr.*, go out, escape.

ex or **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, of ;
ūnā ex parte, on one side ; **ex itinere**, on the march.
excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + cōgitō**, think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.
exeō, exīre, exīl, exitūrus (**ex + eō**), *intr.*, go out, depart, leave.
exercitō, āre, āvī, ātus (**exerceō**, train), *tr.*, exercise, train.
exercitus, ūs (**exerceō**, train), *m.*, army.
existimō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + aestimō**, consider), *tr.*, think, suppose, believe.
expeditus, a, um (**expediō**, free), unincumbered, without baggage.
expellō, ere, expulī, expulsus (**ex + pellō**) *tr.*, drive out, expel.
explōrātor, ōris (**explōrō**), *m.*, scout.
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, search, ascertain, reconnoiter.
expōnō, ere, exposuī, expositus (**ex + pōnō**), *tr.*, expose, abandon.
expositiō, ōnis (**expōnō**), *f.*, exposure, abandonment.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + pugnō**), *tr.*, capture, take by storm, storm.
expectō, āre, āvī, ātus (**ex + spectō**), *tr.*, look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.
exstinguō, ere, exstīnxī, exstinctus (**ex + stinguō**, put out), *tr.*, extinguish, destroy, kill.
exterus, externa, exterum, outer ; *comp.* exterior, *sup.* extrēmus, last, end of.
extrā, *prep. w. acc.*, outside of, beyond.
extrēmus. See **exterus**.

F

faber, fabri, m., mechanic, workman, artisan.

fabricō, āre, āvī, ātus (**faber**), *tr.*, make, construct, build.
fābula, ae (**for**, speak), *f.*, story.
facile (**facilis**), *adv.*, easily ; *comp.* **facilius**, *sup.* **facillimē**.
facilis, e (**faciō**), easy.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, make, do, form, build ; **verba facere**, speak ; **proelium facere**, fight a battle.
factum, ī (**faciō**), *n.*, deed.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *tr.*, deceive ; **spem sē fefellisse**, that they were disappointed in their hope.
familia, ae (**famulus**, slave), *f.*, household, vassals.
fāstus, a, um (**fās**, right), legal, court—.
Faustulus, ī, m., the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.
fefellī. See **fallō**.
fēmina, ae, f., woman.
ferāx, ferācis (**ferō**), fertile, productive.
ferē, adv., nearly, about, almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*, bear, carry ; **lēgem ferre**, propose, institute a law.
ferreus, a, um (**ferrum**, iron), (of) iron ; **ferreae manūs**, grappling-irons.
fertilitās, ātis (**fertilis**, fertile), *f.*, fertility.
ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.
fidēs, eī (**fīdō**, trust), *f.*, faith, confidence, trust ; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.
fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.
filia, ae, f., daughter.
filius, ī, m., son.
fīnis, is, m., limit, end, boundary ; *pl.*, territory.
fīnitimus, a, um (**fīnis**), adjoining, neighboring ; *as subst.*, **fīnitimus, ī, m.**, neighbor.

fiō, fierī, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certior fierī**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, m., Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., river.

fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxus, intr., flow.

foculus, ī (dim. of focus, hearth), m., fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, f., chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effusus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (fortis), adv., bravely.

fortūna, ae (fors), f., fortune, good fortune.

forum, ī, n., market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, ī (fruor), n., grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, intr., w. abl., enjoy.

fuga, ae, f., flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, —, intr., flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, ī, m., smoke.

fūnāle, is (fūnis, cord), n., torch.

funditor, ōris (funda, sling), m., slinger. [madness.

furor, ōris (furō, rage), m., rage,

fūrtum, ī (fūr, thief), n., theft.

futūrus. See **sum**.

G

G. = Gāius, ī, m., a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suesiones.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; *as subst.*, **Gallus, ī, m.**, a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, f., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, ī, m., a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; *as subst.*, **geminī, ōrum, m. pl.**, twins.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (gēns), n., kind, class, species.

Germānus, ī, m., German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, tr., bear, carry, carry on, wage; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mārem sē gessit**, bore herself or acted as a mother.

gladius, ī, m., sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, ī, m., Greek.

grātia, ae (grātus), f., favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum (grātus), tr., congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (gravis), adv., severely.

H

habēō, ēre, habuī, habitus, tr., have, hold; consult (*auspicia*).

Haeduus, ī, m., Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, m.: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247-183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

haud, adv., not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; as subst.,

Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., Helvetians.

hīberna, ōrum (hiems), n. pl., winter quarters.

hīc, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum (hiems), intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

hinc (hīc), adv., hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.

hodiē (hīc + diēs), adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, m. and f., man, human being.

honor, ōris, m., honor.

hōra, ae, f., hour.

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, m., garden.

hospes, hospitīs, m. and f., guest, host.

Hostilius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostilius,** a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostilius,** third king of Rome.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

Hostus. See **Hostilius.**

hūc (hīc), adv., hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, f., ground; **humī,** on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr., throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iactitō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), intr., boast, brag.

iam, adv., now, already, soon.

Iānīcūlum, ī, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuārius, ī (Iānus), m., January.

Iānus, ī, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

īdem, eadem, idem (is + dem), dem. pron. and adj., the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

Idūs, Īduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, m., fire.

īgnōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (īgnārus, ignorant), tr., not to know.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj., that; he, she, it; the former.

imāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, tr., wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immisī, immissus (in + mittō), tr., send into, let into, hurl.

impedimentum, ī (impediō), n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

- impediō, īre, impedivī, impeditus** (in + pēs), *tr.*, entangle, hinder, impede.
- impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus** (in + pellō), *tr.*, urge, impel, incite.
- impendeō, ēre, —, —** (in + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, overhang.
- imperātor, ōris (imperō), m.**, commander, commander in chief, general.
- imperātum, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command.
- imperium, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command, power, government, rule; **nova imperia**, revolution.
- imperō, āre, āvī, ātum** (in + parō), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, command, order, rule.
- impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, obtain, secure, gain.
- impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), m.**, assault, attack, onset.
- impius, a, um** (in *neg.* + pius, reverent), wicked, impious.
- impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus** (in + pōnō), *tr.*, place in.
- imprōvisus, a, um** (in *neg.* + prōvisus, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.
- īmus. See īferus.**
- in-, negative inseparable prefix**, un-, not.
- in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.**, into, against, toward, forward; *w. abl.*, in, on, upon, over.
- incendō, ere, incendiī, incēnsus** (in + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set fire to, burn.
- incidō, ere, incidī, —** (in + cadō), *intr.*, occur.
- incitō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + citō, move swiftly), *tr.*, urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.
- inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr.**, bend, incline, yield.
- inclutus, a, um**, famous.
- incola, ae (incolō), m. and f.**, inhabitant.
- incolō, ere, incoluī, —, tr.**, dwell, live.
- incolumis, e**, unharmed, safe.
- incrēdibilis, e** (in *neg.* + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.
- increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), tr.**, exclaim, upbraid, taunt.
- increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, tr.**, sound, scold, exclaim.
- incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + causa), tr.**, accuse, blame.
- inde, adv.**, thence, thereupon, then.
- index, indicis (indicō), m.**, sign, mark.
- indiciū, ī (indicō), n.**, information; **per indicium**, by informers.
- indicō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + dicō, declare), tr.**, announce, reveal.
- indicō, ere, indīxī, indictus (in + dicō), tr.**, proclaim, announce, appoint.
- infēlix, infēlicis** (in *neg.* + fēlix, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.
- īnferior. See īferus.**
- īfero, īferre, intulī, inlātus (in + ferō), tr.**, carry in, bring in; **sē īferre**, betake one's self; **signa īferre**, charge.
- īferus, a, um**, below; *comp.* **īnferior**, lower, inferior; *sup.* **īnfimus** or **īmus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
- īnfestō, āre, āvī, ātus (īnfestus), tr.**, annoy.
- īnfestus, a, um**, hostile.
- īnfimus. See īferus.**

inflūō, ere, **inflūxī**, **influxum** (in + **fluō**), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.
ingēns, **ingentis**, huge, vast.

ingredior, **ingredī**, **ingressus sum** (in + **gradior**, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.

iniciō, ere, **iniēcī**, **iniectus** (in + **iaciō**), *tr.*, put in.

inimicus, a, um (in *neg.* + **amīcus**), hostile.

inīquus, a, um (in *neg.* + **aequus**), unfavorable, disadvantageous.

initium, ī (**ineō**, begin), *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, ae, *f.*, injury, violence.

inopia, ae (**inops**, without means), *f.*, want, lack.

inquam, *def.*, say; **inquit**, said he.

inrīdeō, ēre, **inrīsī**, **inrīsus** (in + **rīdeō**, laugh), *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

īnsānus, a, um (in *neg.* + **sānus**, sound), mad.

īnsequor, **īnsequī**, **īnsecūtus sum** (in + **sequor**), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

īnsideō, ēre, **īnsēdī**, **īnsessus** (in + **sedeō**), *tr.*, occupy.

īnsidiae, ārum (**īnsideō**), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery.

īnsidior, ārī, ātus sum (**īnsidiae**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, lie in wait for, ambush.

īnsignis, e (**sīgnus**), remarkable, distinguished.

īnsiliō, īre, **īnsiluī**, **īnsultus** (in + **saliō**, leap), *tr.*, leap on.

īnstār, *n. indecl.*, likeness; **īnstār mūrī**, like a wall.

īnstituō, ere, **īnstituī**, **īnstitūtus** (in + **statuō**), *tr.*, form, establish.

īnstitūtum, ī (**īnstituō**), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.

īnstruō, ere, **īnstrūxī**, **īnstrūctus** (in + **struō**, build), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.

īnsula, ae, *f.*, island.

īnsum, **inesse**, **īnfuī**, **īnfutūrus** (in + **sum**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in, be among.

īntellegō, ere, **īntellēxī**, **īntellēctus** (inter + **legō**), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.

īntempestus, a, um (in *neg.* + **tempus**), stormy.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortātī inter sē**, encouraging one another.

īntercēdō, ere, **īntercessī**, **īntercessum** (inter + **cēdō**), *intr.*, lie between, intervene.

īntereā (inter + **is**), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.

īnterficiō, ere, **īnterfēcī**, **īnterfectus** (inter + **faciō**), *tr.*, kill.

īnterim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

īnterior, **īnterius** (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* **īntimus**.

īnterscindō, ere, **īnterscidī**, **īnterscissus** (inter + **scindō**, break down), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.

īntersum, **interesse**, **īnterfuī**, **īnterfutūrus** (inter + **sum**), *intr.*, be among, be present.

īntimus. See **īnterior**.

īnrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.

īnrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, enter.

īnrōdūcō, ere, **īnrōdūxī**, **īnrōductus** (īnrō, within + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead in.

īnrōrsus (īnrō, within + **versus**), *adv.*, inside, within.

īntulī. See **īnferō**.

īnūtilis, e (in *neg.* + **ūtilis**), useless.

inveniō, ire, invēnī, inventus (in + veniō), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.

inveterāscō, ere, inveterāvī, — (in + veterāscō, grow old), *intr.*, become established.

invictus, a, um (in *neg.* + vincō), unconquered.

invītus, a, um, unwilling.

Iovi. See **Iuppiter**.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, determ. pron., self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.

īrātus, a, um (īrāscor, be angry), angered, in anger.

is, ea, id, determ. pron. and adj., he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man) who.

iste, ista, istud, determ. pron. and adj., that (of yours).

ita (is), adv., thus, so.

Italia, ae, f, Italy.

itaque (is), conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item (is), adv., likewise, also.

iter, itineris, n., journey, march; road, way, right of way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

itum, itūrus. See **eō**.

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, tr., w. inf., order, bid, command.

iūdicium, ī (iūdex, judge), n., judgment, trial.

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus (iūdex, judge), tr., judge.

iugum, ī (iungō), n., yoke; **sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender*).

iūmentum, ī (iungō), n., pack animal. **iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus, tr.**, join, fasten together.

iūnior, comp. of iuvenis.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, ae, f., the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.

iūsiurandum, iūrisiurandī (iūs, law + iūrō, swear), n., oath.

iūstitia, ae (iūstus, just), f., justice, uprightness.

iuvenis, e, young; comp. iūnior; as subst. iuvenis, is, m., young man, youth.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, tr., help, aid.

L

Labiēnus, ī, m., one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, ōris, m., labor, work.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus (labor), intr., work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.

laccsō, ere, laccsivī, laccsītus, tr., attack, harass.

lacus, ūs, m., lake.

laetus, a, um, glad.

laevus, a, um, left.

lapis, lapidīs, m., stone.

largitiō, ōnis (largior, lavish), f., liberality; bribery.

lateō, ēre, latuī, —, intr., be concealed, lie hid.

Latinus, a, um, Latin.

lātitudō, inis (lātus), f., width, breadth.

Latobrīgī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.

latrō, ōnis, m., robber, brigand.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide.

lātus. See **ferō**.

latus, lateris, n., side, flank.
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus (laus, praise), *tr.*, praise, commend.
lēgatiō, ōnis (legō, commission), f., embassy, deputation.
lēgātus, ī (legō, commission), m., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.
legiō, ōnis (legō), f., legion.
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, tr., choose.
Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake of Geneva.
lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
levitās, ātis (levis, light), f., lightness, fickleness.
lēx, lēgis (legō), f., law; **lēgem ferre,** propose, establish a law.
liber, librī, m., book.
liber, libera, liberum, free; as subst. **liberī, ōrum, m. pl.,** children.
liberō, āre, āvī, ātus (liber), tr., liberate, free.
libertās, ātis (liber), f., freedom, liberty.
licet, licēre, licuit, impers., it is allowed, permitted.
līnēamentum, ī (līnea, line), m., feature.
littera, ae (linō, smear), f., letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (epistles), documents.
locus, ī, m.; pl., locī and loca, place, position.
longē (longus), adv., far, far off.
longus, a, um, long, distant.
lūcus, ī, m., grove.
lūdibrium, ī (lūdus), n., jest, mockery.
lūdicer, lūdica, lūdicum (lūdus), sportive, playful.
lūdus, ī, m., play, sport, game.
lūna, ae, f., moon.

lupa, ae, f., she-wolf.
lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., purify; review, inspect.
lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight; **primā lūce,** at daybreak.
lūxuria, ae, f., excess, luxury.

M

māchina, ae, f., engine, contrivance.
magis (comp. of multum), adv., more, rather.
magister, magistrī, m., master, teacher.
magistrātus, ūs (magister), m., magistrate, officer.
magnitūdō, inis (magnus), f., size, greatness.
magnopere (magnus + opus), adv., very greatly.
magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.* **maior, sup. maximus; maior nātū,** older; **maximus nātū,** oldest.
maior. See magnus.
male (malus), adv., badly; *comp.* **peius, sup. pessimē.**
mālō, mālī, mālūi (magis + volō), *tr. and intr.,* be more willing, prefer.
malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.* **peior, sup. pessimus.**
Māmurius, ī, m., a Roman smith in the time of Numa.
mandātum, ī (mandō), n., order, command.
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., order, command.
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, intr., remain, stay.
Mānēs, ium, m. pl., the Manes, shades of the dead.
Mānlius, ī, m., Titus Mānlius Torquātus, consul 343 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (**mānsuētus**, tame),
f., mildness, clemency.

manus, ūs, f., hand, band; **manūs**
ferreae, grappling irons.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman name.

mare, maris, n., sea; **marī**, by sea.

maritimus, a, um (**mare**), of the sea,
 maritime.

Mārs, Martis, m., Mars, the Roman
 god of war.

māter, mātris, f., mother; **mātrēm**
sē gessit, bore herself, acted like, a
 mother.

mātrimōnium, ī (**māter**), *n.*, mar-
 riage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere**,
 marry.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., hasten,
 hurry.

maximē (**maximus**), *adv.*, very
 greatly, especially.

maximus. See **magnus**.

Maximus, ī, m., a Roman cognomen.
 See **Valerius**.

mē, mei. See **ego**.

medius, a, um, middle; **per mediōs**
cūstōdēs, through the midst of the
 guards; **quem medium**, the middle
 of which.

melior. See **bonus**.

melius. See **bene**.

memoria, ae, f., memory.

mēns, mentis, f., mind.

mēnsa, ae, f., table.

mēnsis, is, m., month.

mercātor, ōris (**mercor**, trade), *m.*,
 trader, merchant.

Mercurius, ī, m., Mercury, god of
 trade, and messenger of the gods.

mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, tr., dip, sink.

metus, ūs, m., fear, terror.

meus, a, um, poss. adj., my, mine.

mihi. See **ego**.

mīles, militis, m., soldier.

militāris, e (**mīles**), military.

mille, indecl. adj. and noun, thou-
 sand; *pl.* **millia**, always *noun*;
mille passūs, mille passuum, a
 Roman mile.

minimē (**minimus**). See **parum**.

minimus, a, um (*used as sup. of*
parvus), smallest, least.

minor, minus (*see parvus*), smaller,
 less; **minor nātū**, younger.

minus (*used as comp. of parum*), *adv.*,
 less; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless;
sī minus, if not.

mīrābilis, e (**mīror**, wonder), won-
 derful.

mīrāculum, ī (**mīror**, wonder), *n.*,
 wonder, prodigy.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful, surprising.

miser, misera, miserum, wretched,
 poor.

miserē (**miser**), *adv.*, wretchedly.

mītīgō, āre, āvī, ātus (**mītis**, mild
 + **agō**), *tr.*, soften, civilize.

mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, tr., send, hurl.

mōbilitās, ātis (**mōbilis**, change-
 able), *f.*, fickleness.

moenia, moenium, n. pl., walls, for-
 tifications.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, tr.,
 warn, advise.

monitus, ūs (**moneō**), *m.*, warning,
 counsel, suggestion.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morbus, ī, m., sickness, illness; **morbō**
extinctus, died a natural death.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, intr., die.

moror, ārī, ātus sum (**mora**), *intr.*,
 delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, tr., move, influence; **castra movēre**, break up camp.

mox, adv., soon.

Mūcius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola**, a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.

Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.

mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.

multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.

multitūdō, inis (multus), f., numbers, multitude.

multō (abl. of multus), adv., much.

multum (multus), adv., much, greatly.

multus, a, um, much; *pl.*, many;

multā nocte, late at night; **ad**

multam noctem, till late at night.

Mūnātius, ī, m., **Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mūnimentum, ī (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.

mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnī-

tus, tr., fortify, defend.

mūnitiō, ōnis (mūniō), f., fortification.

mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

N

nactus. See nancīscor.

nam, conj., for.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise.

nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

nātū (nāscor), in age; **maior nātū**, older; **minor nātū**, younger.

nātūra, ae (nāscor), f., nature, character.

nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.

nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.

nāvis, is, f., ship.

-ne, enclitic, sign of an interrogative.

nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.

nec. See neque.

necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex), tr., kill, put to death.

nefāstus, a, um (nefās, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefāstus**, a day on which public business could not be transacted.

negō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.

negōtium, ī, n., business, affair; **quicquam negōtī**, any trouble.

nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), m. and f., no one, nobody.

nemus, nemoris, n., grove.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.

neque, nec, conj., and not, but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.

Nerviī, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).

nex, necis, f., death, murder.

niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

nihil, indecl. n., nothing.

nihilō, adv., in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless. [except.

nisi (nē + sī), conj., if not, unless,

nōbilis, e (nōsco, know), noble.

nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), f., nobility, nobles.

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, intr.,
w. dat., hurt, injure, harm.

nocturnus, a, um (nox), by night, in the night.

nōlo, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volō), tr. and intr., not to wish, be unwilling;
nōlitē, w. infin., do not.

nōmen, nōminis (nōsco, know), n., name.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen), tr., name, call.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnnūllus, a, um (nōn + nūllus), some, several.

Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.

Nōricus, a, um, Norican; ager Nōricus, a country between the Danube and the Alps.

nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., we, ourselves.

noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs), poss. adj., our, ours; *pl.,* nostrī, ōrum, our men, our troops.

novem, indecl., nine.

Noviodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.

novus, a, um, new; novissimum, last; **novissimum agmen,** the rear.

nox, noctis, f., night; **multā nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare), tr., make bare, clear.

nūllus, a, um (nē + ūllus), no, not any, none, no one.

num, interrog. particle, implying the answer 'no.'

Numa, ae, m. See Pompilius.

numerus, ī, m., number.

Numida, ae, m., Numidian.

Numitor, ōris, m., king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam (nē + umquam, ever), *adv.,* never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntius), tr., report, announce.

nūntius, ī, m., messenger.

nūper, adv., recently, lately.

nusquam (nē + usquam, anywhere), *adv.,* nowhere, on no occasion.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., for, on account of, because of.

obaerātus, ī (ob + aes, money), m., debtor.

obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (ob + dūcō), tr., extend, make.

obruō, ere, obrui, obrutus (ob + ruō, rush), tr., overwhelm, bury, crush.

obses, obsidis (obsideō), m., hostage, pledge.

obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (ob + sedeō), tr., besiege.

obsum, obesse, obfui, obfuturus (ob + sum), w. dat., be against, injure.

obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus (ob + teneō), tr., possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, īre, obvēnī, obventum (ob + veniō), intr., come to, meet, come.

occāsus, ūs (occidō, fall), m., setting (of the sun).

occidō, ere, occidī, occisus (ob + caedō, cut down), tr., cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, concealed.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + capiō), tr., take possession of, seize, occupy.

Ōceanus, ī, *m.*, ocean.

Ocelum, ī, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

octō, *indecl.*, eight.

oculus, ī, *m.*, eye.

odium, ī (odī, hate), *n.*, hatred, enmity.

omnīnō (omnis), *adv.*, altogether, at all.

omnis, e, all, every, whole.

opīniō, ōnis (opīnor, think), *f.*, notion, belief, impression.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper.

oppidānus, ī (oppidum), *m.*, inhabitant of a town, townsman.

oppidum, ī, *n.*, walled town.

opprimō, ere, oppressī, oppressus (ob + premō, press), *tr.*, crush, fall upon.

oppugnātiō, ōnis (oppugnō), *f.*, assault, storm, siege.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + pugnō), *tr.*, attack, besiege.

ops, opis, *f.*, aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.

optimē (optimus), best, excellently. *See bene.*

optimus, a, um, *sup. of bonus.*

optiō, ōnis (optō), *f.*, choice.

optō, āre, āvī, ātus, wish, choose.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor, fortification.

ōrātiō, ōnis (ōrō), *f.*, speech, words.

ōrdinō, āre, āvī, ātus (ōrdō), *tr.*, arrange, regulate.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, line, rank.

Orgetorīx, īgis, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetii.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise.

ōrnātus, ūs (ōrnō, adorn), *m.*, attire, decoration.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ōs), *tr.*, beseech, beg.

ortus. *See orior.*

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face.

P

P. = Pūblius.

pācō, āre, āvī, ātus (pāx), *tr.*, pacify, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palūs, ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.

pandō, ere, pandī, passus, *tr.*, spread out; **passīs manibus**, with outstretched hands.

pār, paris, equal (to).

parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready.

pāreō, ēre, pārui, pāritūrus, *intr. w. dat.*, obey.

parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, prepare, provide.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, side, direction.

parum, *adv.*, little; *comp. minus*; *sup. minimē.*

parvulus, a, um (parvus), very little; *as subst. parvulus*, ī, *m.*, little fellow.

parvus, a, um, little, small; *comp. minor*; *sup. minimus.*

passus. *See pandō and patior.*

passus, ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs**, *pl. mīllia passuum*, a mile.

pāstor, ōris (pāscō, feed), *m.*, shepherd.

pateō, ēre, patui, —, *intr.*, be open, extend.

pater, patris, *m.*, father.

patior, pati, passus sum, *tr.*, suffer, allow, endure.

patria, ae (patrius), *f.*, country, native land.

patrius, a, um (pater), ancestral.
paucī, ōrum, few.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.

paululum (paulus, small), *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.

peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, transgress, offend.

pecūnia, ae (pecus), *f.*, money.

pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd.

pedes, peditis (pēs), *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.

Pedius, ī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

peior, *comp.* of malus.

peius, *comp.* of male.

pello, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive out, expel, rout, conquer.

per, *prep.* w. *acc.*, through, over, by, by means of.

peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (per + ager), *tr.*, wander through, roam over.

perdūcō, ere, perdūxī, perductus (per + dūcō), *tr.*, lead, lead through, construct.

perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual, never failing.

perficiō, ere, perfēcī, perfectus (per + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete.

perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faithless, treacherous.

periclitōr, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, make trial of, try.

periculum, ī, *n.*, danger.

peritus, a, um, skillful.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissus (per + mittō), *tr.*, give up, intrust, permit.

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus (per + movēō), *tr.*, move, arouse, influence, alarm.

perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous), *adv.*, continually, forever.

perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, perruptus (per + rumpō, break), *tr.*, break through.

perspiciō, ere, perspēxī, perspectus (per + speciō, see), *tr.*, see through.

persuadeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum (per + suādeō, persuade), *tr.*, w. *dat.* of *pers.*, persuade, prevail on.

pertineō, ēre, pertinui, — (per + teneō), *intr.*, extend, pertain, relate.

pertrāctus. See pertrahō.

pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus (per + trahō), *tr.*, drag, lead.

pervenio, ire, pervēnī, perventum, (per + veniō) *intr.*, arrive at, reach.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.

pessimē, *sup.* of male.

pessimus, *sup.* of malus.

petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus, *tr.*, aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.

pietās, ātis (pius, pious), *f.*, devotion, loyalty.

piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.

pignus, pignoris, *n.*, pledge, assurance.

pilum, ī, *n.*, javelin.

pirus, ī, *f.*, pear tree.

Plancus, ī. See Mūnātius.

plānitiēs, ēī (plānus, flat), *f.* plain, level ground.

plēbēs, ēī, or plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, common people.

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, generally in plural, most, very many.

plūrimus, a, um (*sup.* of multus), most, very many; plūrimum posse, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.

plūs, *comp.* of multum.

plūs, plūris (*comp. of multus*), more; *pl.*, several, more.

pōcūm, ī, n., drinking cup.

poena, ae, f., punishment, penalty; **poenās dare**, suffer punishment.

Poenī, ōrum, m. pl., Carthaginians.

polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

Pompēius, ī, m., Pompey.

Pompilius, ī, m., Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, tr., place, put, pitch (a camp).

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

poposcī. See poscō.

populor, ārī, ātus sum (populus), *tr.*, ravage, lay waste.

populus, ī, m., people.

Porsena, ae, f., king of Clusium in Etruria.

porta, ae, f., gate, door.

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., carry, bring.

portus, ūs, m., port, harbor.

poscō, ere, poposcī, —, tr., ask, demand.

possideō, ēre, possēdī, —, tr., hold, occupy.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; plūrimum posse, be very powerful.

post, adv., afterwards, later.

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind.

postea (post + is), adv., afterwards.

posterus, a, um, following, next; comp. posterior; sup. postrēmus.

postquam (post + quam), conj., after.

postrīdiē (posterus + diēs), adv., on the following day.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., demand, ask.

potēns, potentis, adj. (pres. part. of possum), powerful, able.

potentātus, ūs (potēns), m., supreme power, rule.

potestās, ātis (potis, able), f., power, authority, privilege.

potior, potirī, potitus sum (potis, able), intr., w. abl., get possession of.

prae, prep. w. abl., before.

praebeō, ēre, praebuī, praebitus (prae + habeō), tr., furnish, supply.

praecinō, ere, praecinūī, — (prae + canō, sing), tr., play before.

praeda, ae, f., booty, spoil.

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus (prae + faciō), tr., set over, put in charge of.

praelūceō, ēre, praelūxī, — (prae + lūceō, shine), intr., shine before.

praemittō, ere, praemisī, praemissus (prae + mittō), tr., send ahead, dispatch.

praemium, ī, n., reward.

praescribō, ere, praescripsī, praescriptus (prae + scribō), tr., direct, order.

praesidium, ī (praesideō, defend), n., guard, defense, garrison.

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus (prae + stō, stand), intr., stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*, show.

praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (prae + sum), intr., w. dat., be at head of, be in charge of, command. [besides.

praetereā (praeter, beyond + is), adv., **praeveniō, īre, praevēnī, praeventus (prae + veniō), tr.**, come before outstrip, forestall.

prātum, *i*, *n.*, field, meadow.

prīmō (**prīmus**), *adv.*, at first.

primum (**prīmus**), *adv.*, first; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

prīmus, *a*, *um*, first; **prīmā lūce**, at daybreak; **prīmus dēvicit**, was the first to conquer.

prīnceps, **prīncipis** (**prīmus + capiō**), *m.*, chief, leader, author.

prior, **prius** (**prō**), former, previous.

priusquam (**prius**, sooner + **quam**), *conj.*, before, sooner than.

prīvātus, *a*, *um* (**prīvō**, deprive), private.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp.* **prior**; *sup.* **prīmus**.

Proca, *ae*, *m.*, a king of Alba Longa.

prōcēdō, *ere*, **prōcessī**, **prōcessum** (**prō + cēdō**), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.

procul, *adv.*, far off, from afar.

prōcūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (**prō + cūrō**), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.

prōditiō, *ōnis* (**prōdō**, betray), *f.*, treachery, treason.

proelium, *i*, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, *ōnis* (**proficīscor**), *f.*, setting forth, departure.

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum** (**prōficiō**, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.

profugiō, *ere*, **profūgī**, — (**prō + fugiō**), *intr.*, flee, escape.

prōgredior, **prōgredī**, **progressus sum** (**prō + gradior**, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.

prohibeō, *ēre*, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** (**prō + habeō**), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prevent.

prōiciō, *ere*, **prōiēcī**, **prōiectus** (**prō + iaciō**), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.

prōmittō, *ere*, **prōmisī**, **prōmissus** (**prō + mittō**), *tr.*, promise.

prope, *adv.*, near, nearly; *comp.* **propius**; *sup.* **proximē**.

properō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *intr.*, hasten.

propīnquitās, *ātis* (**propīnquus**, near), *f.*, nearness, relationship.

propior, **propius** (**prope**), nearer.

propius (*comp. of prope*), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.

prōpōnō, *ere*, **prōposuī**, **prōpositus** (**prō + pōnō**), *tr.*, set forth, declare, propose.

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, **prōfuturus** (**prō + sum**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be of service or use to, benefit.

prōtinus, *adv.*, ahead, directly.

prōturbō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (**prō + turbō**, confuse), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.

prōvincia, *ae*, *f.*, province.

prōvolō, *āre*, *āvī*, — (**prō + volō**), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.

proximē (**proximus**), *adv.*, last, recently.

proximus, *a*, *um* (**prope**), nearest, next; in **proximō**, near by.

prūdēns, **prudentis** (**prō + vidēns**), foreseeing, wise.

prūdentē (**prūdēns**), *adv.*, wisely.

pūblicus, *a*, *um* (**populus**), public; **rēs pūblica**, the state, republic.

Pūblius, *i*, *m.*, a Roman name.

pudor, *ōris*, *m.*, sense of shame, honor.

puella, *ae* (**puer**), *f.*, girl.

puer, **puerī**, *m.*, boy.

pugna, *ae*, *f.*, fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum (pugnus, fist), *intr.*, fight; **pugnātum est**, they fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchrī, m., P. Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (pulcher), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (pullus), *m.*, keeper of the sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, m., chicken.

pulsus. See **pellō**.

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician, Carthaginian.

pūniō, īre, pūnīvī, pūnītus (poena), *tr.*, punish.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, (of the) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, indecl., forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, to seek, ask. [possible.]

quam, than; *with a sup.*, as possible, **quantus, a, um**, how great, as.

quārē (quae + rēs), *adv.*, for which reason, therefore.

quārtus (quattuor), *adj.*, fourth.

quasī (quam + sī), *adv.*, on the ground that, because.

quattuor, indecl., four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore.

quicquam. See **quisquam**.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pron., certain, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, adv., indeed, truly.

quīn, conj., that not; that; from (*after verbs of hindering*).

quīndecim (quīnque + decem), *indecl.*, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, indecl., five.

Quīntus, ī (quīntus, fifth), *m.*, a Roman name.

Quirinālis, is, m., Quirinal, one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, ī, n., the name given to Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid and quī, quae or qua, quod, interrog. and indef. pron., who, which, what; any, any one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quodquam, indef. pron., any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron., each (one), every (one).

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis (quī + vis, *from volō*), *indef. pron.*, any one you please.

quō (quī), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (quī), *conj.*, because.

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

quoniam, conj., since, because.

quoque, adv., also, likewise.

R

rapīō, ere, rapuī, raptus, tr., seize, steal. **ratio, ōnis** (reor, think), *f.*, consideration, method.

ratis, is, f., raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, m., a Celtic tribe near the Rhine.

recidō, ere, recidī, — (cadō), intr., fall back, fall, come back to.

- recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (capiō),**
tr., take back, receive; *sē recipere*,
 betake one's self, retreat.
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō),**
tr., give back, return, render.
- redeō. redire, rediī, reditūrus, intr.,**
 go back, return.
- redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (integer,**
 whole), *tr.*, restore, renew.
- reditiō, ōnis (redeō), f.,** return.
- redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (dūco),**
tr., lead back.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō),**
tr., carry back; *pedem referre*, re-
 treat.
- rēgīna, ae (rēx), f.,** queen.
- rēgius, a, um (rēx),** kingly, royal;
aedēs rēgiae, palace.
- rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnum), intr.,**
 be king, reign. [kingdom.]
- rēgnum, ī (rēx), n.,** royal power,
- regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, tr.,** guide, rule.
- relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor,**
 slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.
- religiō, ōnis, f.,** piety; *pl.*, rites.
- relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus (linquō,**
 leave), *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
- reliquus, a, um,** remaining, left, the
 rest of; *nihil reliquī*, nothing left;
in reliquum tempus, for the future.
- remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (maneō),**
intr., remain, stay.
- remūneror, ārī, ātus sum (mūnus),**
tr., repay, reward.
- Remus, ī, m.,** the brother of Romulus.
- Rēmūs, ī, m.,** a Roman, one of the
 Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.
- renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō), tr.,**
 report.
- repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus (pellō),**
tr., drive back, repulse.
- repente, adv.,** suddenly, unexpectedly.
- reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus (pariō,**
 produce). *tr.*, find, discover, ascer-
 tain.
- reppulī. See repellō.**
- reprehendō, ere, reprehendī, repre-**
hēnsus (prehendō, seize), tr., blame,
 censure.
- reprōmittō, ere, reprōmisi, reprō-**
missus (prōmittō), tr., promise in
 return.
- rēs, rei, f.,** thing, affair, circumstance;
rēs frūmentāria, provisions, sup-
 plies of grain; *rēs pūblica*, state,
 republic; *quam ob rem*, wherefore,
 therefore.
- rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus**
(scindō, break down), tr., break
 down, destroy.
- resistō, ere, resistī, — (sistō, place),**
intr., w. dat., oppose, resist, hold
 one's ground.
- respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus**
(spondeō, promise), tr., reply,
 answer.
- restituō, ere, restitui, restitutus**
(statuō), tr., renew, restore.
- retineō, ēre, retinui, retentus (teneō),**
tr., hold back, keep back, detain,
 retain.
- revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus**
(vertō), intr., turn back, return.
- reviviscō, ere, —, — (vivō), intr.,**
 be alive again.
- revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō), tr.,**
 recall.
- rēx, rēgis, m.,** king.
- Rhēa, ae, f.,** Rhea Silvia, the mother
 of Romulus and Remus.
- Rhēnus, ī, m.,** the Rhine.
- Rhodanus, ī, m.,** the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, wet, moisten.
rīpa, *ae, f.*, bank (of a river).

rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak; strength.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, ask, beg.

Rōma, *ae, f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, *a, um* (Rōma), Roman;

as subst. Rōmānus, *i, m.*, a Roman.

Rōmulus, *i, m.*, the reputed founder of Rome.

rosa, *ae, f.*, rose.

rūmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report.

rūsus (revertor), *adv.*, back, again.

rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; rūri, in the country.

S

Sabīnus, *i, m.* 1. A Sabine. 2. *See* Titūrius.

Sabis, *is, m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, the modern Sambre.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, sacred;
as subst. sacrum, *i, n.*, a holy thing, religious rite.

sacerdōs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*, priest, priestess.

sacrificium, *i* (sacer + faciō), *n.*, sacrifice.

sacrum. *See* sacer.

saepe, *adv.*, often; saepius, very often.

saepēs, *is, f.*, hedge, fence.

sagitta, *ae, f.*, arrow.

sagittārius, *i* (sagitta), *m.*, bowman.

Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m.*, dancing priests of Mars.

saltem, *adv.*, at least.

saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump; ravine.

Santonēs, *um, m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe near the Garonne.

sarcina, *ae, f.*, bundle, pack.

satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*, enough.
saxum, *i, n.*, rock, stone.

Scaevola, *ae* (scaeva, left-handed), *m.*, a surname of Gaius Mucius.

scapha, *ae, f.*, skiff, boat.

scientia, *ae* (sciō), *f.*, knowledge, skill.

sciō, scīre, scīvī or scīi, scītus, *tr.*, know, know how.

scrība, *ae* (scribō), *m.*, writer, scribe, secretary.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr.*, write.

scūtum, *i, n.*, shield.

sē. *See* suī.

sēcrētus, *a, um* (sēcernō, separate), concealed, hidden, secret. [along.

secundum (secundus), *prep. w. acc.*,

secundus, *a, um* (sequor), following, second; favorable.

secūtus. *See* sequor.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdecim, *indecl.*, sixteen.

sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.

sedīle, *is* (sedeō), *n.*, seat.

sēgnis, *e*, slow, sluggish.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

sella, *ae* (sedeō), *f.*, seat, chair; sella

curūlis, a portable chair, opening like a camp-stool. Its use belonged at first only to the king, but later to curule aediles, praetors, consuls, dictators, and the Flamines.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever.

senātor, ōris (senex), *m.*, senator.

senātus, ūs (senex), *m.*, senate.

senectūs, ūtis (senex), *f.*, old age.

senex, *gen.* senis, old, aged; *comp.* senior; *sup.* maximus nātū.

Senonēs, *um, m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

- sententia, *ae* (*sentiō*, discern), *f.*, opinion, decision.
- sepeliō, *ire*, sepelivī, sepultus, *tr.*, septem, *indecl.*, seven. [bury.]
- septimus, *a, um* (septem), *adj.*, seventh.
- septuāgintā, *indecl.*, seventy.
- sepultus. See sepeliō.
- Sēquanus, *a, um*, Sequanian; *as subst.*
- Sēquanus, *i, m.*, a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow.
- servō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (servus), *tr.*, keep, preserve, save.
- servus, *i, m.*, slave.
- sēsē. See suī.
- sex, *indecl.*, six.
- sī, *conj.*, if; sī minus, if not.
- sibi. See suī.
- sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.
- siccus, *a, um*, dry; in siccō, on dry ground.
- sīgnificō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (sīgnum + faciō), *tr.*, signify, declare.
- sīgnum, *i, n.*, sign, signal, standard, ensign; sīgna convertere, face about; sīgna inferre, charge.
- silēns, silentis (sileō, be still), silent, quiet.
- silva, *ae, f.*, wood, forest.
- silvestris, *e* (silva), wooded.
- similis, *e*, like, similar.
- simulō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (similis), *tr.*, pretend.
- sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
- singulī, *ae, a*, one by one, individual, each.
- sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left.
- societās, *ātis* (socius), *f.*, alliance.
- sociō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (socius), *tr.*, join, share.
- socius, *i* (sequor), *m.*, companion, ally.
- sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun; sōle ortō, at sunrise.
- soleō, *ēre, solitus sum, intr.*, be accustomed.
- sōlitūdō, *inis* (sōlus), *f.*, wilderness.
- solitus. See soleō.
- sollicitō, *āre, āvī, ātus, tr.*, stir up, arouse, provoke.
- sōlus, *a, um*, only, alone, sole.
- somnium, *i* (somnus), *n.*, dream.
- somnus, *i, m.*, sleep.
- soror, *ōris, f.*, sister.
- spatium, *i, n.*, space, distance, time, opportunity.
- spectāculum, *i* (spectō, behold), *n.*, sight, show, spectacle.
- speculātor, *ōris, m.*, scout, spy.
- spērō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (spēs), *tr.*, hope, expect.
- spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
- sponte (*abl.*), of one's own accord.
- statim (stō), *adv.*, forthwith, immediately.
- statiō, *ōnis* (stō), *f.*, post, picket, guard.
- statua, *ae* (statuō), *f.*, image, statue.
- statuō, *ere, statuī, statūtus, tr.*, place, decide, determine.
- stella, *ae, f.*, star.
- stīpendium, *i* (stīps, gift + pendō, pay), *n.*, pay, tribute.
- strepitus, *ūs, m.*, noise.
- studeō, *ēre, studuī, —, intr.*, be eager for, desire.
- studium, *i* (studeō), *n.*, zeal, eagerness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.

sub, *prep.* w. *abl.* and *acc.*: w. *abl.*, under, below, at the foot of; w. *acc.*, under, up to, to the foot of.

subducō, ere, **subdūxī**, **subductus** (sub + dūcō), *tr.*, bring up.

subitō (**subitus**, sudden), *adv.*, suddenly. *See tollō.* [denly.]

submitto, ere. **submīsī**, **submissus** (sub + mitto), *tr.*, send, furnish.

subruō, ere, **subruī**, **subrutus** (sub + ruō, overthrow), *tr.*, dig under, undermine.

subsequor, **subsequī**, **subsecūtus sum** (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

subsidiū, ī (sub + sedeō), *n.*, aid, relief.

succēdō, ere, **successī**, **successum** (sub + cēdō), *tr.* and *intr.*, come up, approach. [proach.]

successus, ūs (**succēdō**), *m.*, ap-
Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sufficiō, ere, **suffēcī**, **suffectum** (sub + faciō), *intr.*, be sufficient.

suī, *pers. pron.*, of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat.* **sibi**, *acc.* and *abl.* **sē**, **sēsē**; *inter* **sē**, to one another.

sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *intr.*, be; w. *dat.* of possession, have.

summa, ae (**summus**), *f.*, the whole; leadership, supremacy.

summus. *See superus.*

sūmō, ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *tr.*, take, assume, begin (battle).

super, *prep.* w. *acc.* and *abl.*, over, upon, in addition to.

superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.

supericiō, ere, **superiēcī**, **superiectus** (super + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across.

superior. *See superus.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātus (**superus**), *tr.*, surpass, overcome, conquer.

supersedēō, ēre, **supersēdī**, **supersesus** (super + sedeō), *intr.*, w. *dat.*, be superior, refrain from.

supersum, **superesse**, **superfuī**, **superfutūrus** (super + sum), *intr.*, w. *dat.*, be over, survive.

superus, a, um (**super**), above; *comp.* **superior**, **ius**, upper, former; *sup.* **suprēmus**, **summus**, highest, very great, top of.

supervenīō, īre, **supervēnī**, **superventum** (super + venīō), *intr.*, arrive.

supplicium, ī (**supplex**, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.

suprā, *adv.* and *prep.* w. *acc.*, above, before.

suprēmus. *See superus.*

suscipiō, ere, **suscēpī**, **susceptus** (sub + capiō), *tr.*, undertake.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (**sustineō**), *tr.*, endure, withstand.

sustineō, ēre, **sustinuī**, **sustentus** (sub + teneō), *tr.* and *intr.*, hold up, withstand, sustain.

sustulī. *See tollō.*

suus, a, um (**suī**), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; **suaque omnia**, all their possessions.

T

T. = **Titus**. [verbs.]

tam, *adv.*, so (w. adjectives and adverbs); **tamen**, *adv.*, however, yet, nevertheless.

tantus, a, um (**tam**), so great, such.

Tarpēia, ae, *f.*, a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.

Tatius, *i, m.*, Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.

tē, *acc. of tū*.

tēlum, *i, n.*, missile, weapon.

temeritās, *ātis, f.*, rashness.

tempestās, *ātis (tempus), f.*, storm,

templum, *i, n.*, temple. [tempest.

tempus, *temporis, n.*, time, occasion.

tendō, *ere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, tr.*, spread out, stretch.

teneō, *ēre, tenuī*, —, *tr.*, hold. [delicate.

tener, **tenera**, **tenerum**, tender, young,

terra, *ae, f.*, earth, land, country;

terrā, by land.

terreō, *ēre, terruī, territus, tr.*, frighten, terrify.

tertius, *a, um (trēs)*, third.

testūdō, *inis, f.*, tortoise; shed.

Teutonī, *ōrum or Teutonēs, um, m.*

pl, Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.

Tiberis, *is, m.*, the Tiber.

tibi, *dat. of tū*.

tībīcen, *inis, m.*, piper, flute player.

timeō, *ēre, timuī*, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of.

timidus, *a, um (timeō)*, afraid, timid.

timor, *ōris, m.*, fear.

Titūrius, *i, m.*, **Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, *i, m.*, a Roman name.

tollō, *ere, sustulī, sublātus, tr.*, lift up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, *ium, m. pl.*, Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, *i (torqueō, twist), n.*, a military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, *i (torquis, necklace), m.*, a surname of Titus Manlius. *See*

Mānlius.

tōtus, *a, um*, whole, all.

trādō, *ere, trādidi, trāditus (trāns + dō), tr.*, give over, give up, deliver, surrender.

trādūcō, *ere, trādūxī, trāductus (trāns + dūcō), tr.*, lead over, transport.

trāciō, *ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus (trāns + iaciō), tr.*, throw or carry across, pass over, transfix.

Trallēs, **Trallium**, *f.*, a town of Lydia.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, over, through.

trānseō, *īre, trānsiī, trānsitus (trāns + eō), tr. and intr.*, cross, go over, pass over, go across.

trānsfugiō, *ere, trānsfūgī*, — (*trāns + fugiō*), *intr.*, flee over, go over.

trānsgredior, **trānsgredī**, **trānsgressus sum** (*trāns + gradior, go*), *tr.*, go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, *īre, trānsiluī*, — (*trāns + saliō, leap*), *tr.*, leap over, jump across.

trānsversus, *a, um (trānsvertō, turn across)*, transverse; **trānsversa fossa**, cross ditch.

trecentī, *ae, a (trēs + centum)*, three hundred.

tredecim (*trēs + decem*), *indecl.*, thirteen.

trēs, **tria**, three.

tribūnal, **ālis (tribūnus)**, *n.*, judgment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, *i (tribus, tribe), m.*, tribune, a military officer.

trīduum, *i (trēs + diēs), n.*, interval of three days.

trīgintā, *indecl.*, thirty.

triumphus, *i, m.*, triumph.

tū, **tuī**, *pers. pron.*, you, thou.

tuba, ae, *f.*, trumpet.

tulī. *See* ferō.

Tulingī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.

tumultus, ī, *m.*, uproar, disturbance.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turba, ae, *f.*, throng, crowd.

turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turris, is, *f.*, tower.

tūtēla, ae (tueor, protect), *m.*, guardian, protection.

tūtus, a, um (tueor, protect), safe.

tuus, a, um (tū), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ūllus, a, um, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup.* ultimus, a, um.

ultrā, *adv.* and *prep.* w. *acc.*, beyond, farther.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

ūndecim (ūnus + decem), *indecl.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from or on all sides.

ūniversus, a, um (ūnus + vertō, turn), whole, entire.

ūnus, a, um, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūsus, a, um. *See* ūtor.

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; ūsuī esse, be of service.

ut, utī, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

utī. *See* ut.

ūtī. *See* ūtor.

ūtilis, e (ūtor), useful.

utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may. [*employ.*]

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, w. *abl.*, use,

uxor, ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacuus, a, um, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadum, ī, *n.*, shoal, ford.

vāgītus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.

Valerius, ī, *m.*, Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvīnus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, a, um (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vāllum, ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, earthworks.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (vāstus), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, vast, enormous.

vēlōcitās, ātis (vēlōx), *f.*, speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

velut, velutī, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

venia, ae, *f.*, favor, permission.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come; in fidem venīre, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, hunt, chase.

verbum, ī, *n.*, word; verba facere, speak.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.

veritus. *See* vereor.

vērō (vērus, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

- vertex, verticis** (*vertō*, turn), *m.*, summit, crest.
- vērūm** (*vērus*, true), *adv.*, certainly, but.
- vēscor, vēscī**, —, *def.*, *w. abl.*, eat.
- Vesta, ae, f.**, goddess of the hearth, and hence of the family and state. Her sacred fire, kept continually burning in her temple near the Forum, was watched by six priestesses, called Vestals.
- vester, vestra, vestrum** (*vōs*), your, yours.
- vestis**, is, *f.*, garment, clothing.
- vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, tr.**, forbid.
- vetus, veteris**, old, ancient; *comp.* *vetustior*; *sup.* *veterrimus*.
- vēxillum, ī, n.**, a military ensign.
- via, ae, f.**, way, road, street, journey.
- vīcī**. See *vincō*.
- vīcīnus, a, um** (*vīcus*), neighboring, near.
- victor, ōris** (*vincō*), *m.*, conqueror, victor.
- victōria, ae** (*victor*), *f.*, victory.
- victus, victurus**. See *vincō*.
- vīcus, ī, m.**, village.
- vidēlicet** (*videō* + *licet*), *adv.*, of course, that is.
- videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, tr.**, see; *pass.*, seem, appear.
- vigilia, ae, f.**, watching, watch (a fourth part of the night).
- vīgintī, indecl.**, twenty.
- vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīctus, tr.**, bind.
- vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, tr.**, conquer, overcome.
- vinculum, ī** (*vinciō*), *n.*, chain, fetter; in *or ex vinculīs*, in chains.
- vindicō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, punish, inflict punishment.
- vīnea, ae, f.**, a military shed.
- vīnum, ī, n.**, wine.
- vīnxī**. See *vinciō*.
- vir, virī, m.**, man.
- vīrēs**. See *vīs*.
- virgō, virginis, f.**, virgin, maiden, girl.
- Viromandui, ōrum, m. pl.**, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- virtūs, virtūtis** (*vir*), *f.*, manhood, virtue, bravery, courage.
- vīs, vim, f.**, power, force, number; *pl.* *vīrēs*, strength.
- vīta, ae, f.**, life.
- vīvō, ere, vīxī**, —, *intr.*, live.
- vix, adv.**, hardly, barely.
- vīxī**. See *vīvō*.
- vocō, āre, āvī, ātus** (*vōx*), *tr.*, call, summon.
- Vocontii, ōrum, m. pl.**, a tribe of Gaul.
1. **volō, velle, voluī**, —, wish, desire, be willing.
2. **volō, āre, āvī, āturus, intr.**, fly.
- voluntārius, a, um** (*voluntās*), willing, voluntary.
- voluntās, ātis** (1. *volō*), *f.*, desire, consent, favor.
- vōs, pl. of tū**.
- voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, tr.**, vow, promise.
- vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; *pl.*, words.
- vulgō** (*vulgus*, multitude), *adv.*, generally, everywhere.
- vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus** (*vulnus*), *tr.*, wound.
- vulnus, vulneris, n.**, wound.
- vultur, vulturis, m.**, vulture.
- vultus, ūs, m.**, expression, looks, countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH — LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

able, potēns, potentis; **be able**, possum, posse, potuī.

about to, be, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *ful. participle*.

above, superus.

absent, be, absum, āfuī, āfutūrus.

abundance, cōpia, ae, *f*.

accomplish, cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.

account of, on, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*

across, trāns, *w. acc.*; (**a bridge**) **across the river**, in flūmine.

adjoining, finitimus, a, um.

administer, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

advance, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum.

advantage, ūsus, ūs, *m*.

advice, cōsiliū, ī, *n*.

advise, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

affair, rēs, rei, *f*.

afraid, be, timeō, ēre, timuī, —.

after, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.

afterwards, *adv.*, postea.

against, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; **be against**, obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus.

agreeable, grātus, a, um.

aid, auxilium, ī, *n*. [*w. dat.*]

aid, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus,

aim, petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petītus.

alarm, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.

alliance, amīcitia, ae, *f*.

allow, patior, patī, passus sum; **permit**, mitto, ere, permīsi, permissum; **concede**, cēdō, ere, concessī, concessum.

ally, socius, ī, *m*.

alone, sōlus, a, um.

already, iam.

although, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 315.

always, semper.

am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

ambassador, lēgātus, ī, *m*.

among, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; **be among**, insum, inesse, infuī, infutūrus; **intersum**, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*

ample, amplus, a, um.

ancient, vetus, veteris.

and, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.

animal, animal, animālis, *n*.

announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; **ēnūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātus.

another, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, aliēnus, a, um.

answer, respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus.

any, any one, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quiscquam, quicquam; quivīs, quaevis, quodvīs.

appoint, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

approach, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*

approach, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*; accēdō, ere, accessī, accessurus, *w. ad and acc.*

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*

arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.

arms, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; **army on the march**, agmen, agminis, *n.*

around, circum, *w. acc.*

arouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus; permōvō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

arrange, instruō, ere, instrūxī, instructus.

arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum.

arrow, sagitta, ae, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

ascertain, reperiō, īre, repperī, repretus.

ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petītus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.

assemble, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus.

at, ad, *w. acc.*; *sign of abl. of time.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*

attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*

attack, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; laccessō, ere, laccessivī, laccessitus.

attempt, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.

authority, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; potestās, ātis, *f.*

await, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, a, um.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*

band, manus, ūs, *f.*

bank (of river), rīpa, ae, *f.*

barbarous, barbarus, a, um.

battle, proelium, ī, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*; **line of battle**, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

beautifully, pulchrē.

because, quod; *abl. of cause*; **because of**, propter, *w. acc.*

before, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*

beg, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petītus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.

begin, coepī, coepisse, coepturus sum; **begin battle**, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

behalf of, in, prō, *w. abl.*

behind, post, *w. acc.*

Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m.*

believe, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *w. dat.*

below, inferus, a, um.

benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfuturus, *w. dat.*

benefit, ūsus, ūs, *n.*

besiege, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.

best, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.

betake one's self, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (*refl.*).

between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, īre, vīnxi, vīnctus.
bird, avis, is, *f*.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n*.
book, liber, librī, *m*.
booty, praeda, ae, *f*.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, īmus, a, um.
boundary, finēs, ium, *m. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m*.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō. ferre, tulī, lātus ; portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **bring in**, inferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus ; **bring together**, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus ; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n*.
burn, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
but, sed, at ; autem (*postpositive*).
by, sign of *abl.* ; ā or ab, *w. abl.* ; **by means of**, *abl. of means* ; per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m*.
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; appellō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
care, cūra, ae, *f*.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, ae, *f*.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; **carry back**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus ; **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f*.
case, causa, ae, *f*.
cause, causa, ae, *f*.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.* ; equitēs, um, *m. plur.* ; (**of the**) **cavalry**, equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, *m*.
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī ; **in chains**, ex vinculis.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m*.
change, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.
charge, signa īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.* ; **put in charge of**, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. dat.*
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m*.
children, liberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, *f*.
citizen, civis, is, *m. and f*.
citizenship, civitās, ātis, *f*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f*.
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n*.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum ; **come around**, circumveniō, īre, circum-

- vēnī, circumventus; **come near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessurus; **come together**, conveniō, ire, convēnī, conventus; **come up**, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.
- command**, imperium, ī, *n*.
command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus; praesum, praeesse, prae-fui, praefuturus (*w. dat.*).
commander, dux, ducis, *m*.; imperātor, ōris, *m*.
commit, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f*.
companion, socius, ī, *m*.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus.
complete, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.
concerning, dē, *w. abl*.
condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocutus sum.
confidence, fidēs, eī, *f*.
congratulate, grātulor, ārī, ātus sum.
conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; vincō, ere, vīcī, victus.
conspiracy, coniūratiō, ōnis, *f*.
conspirator, coniūrātus, ī, *m*.
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m*.
contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātus.
contracted, angustus, a, um.
convert, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.
Corinth, Corinthus, ī, *f*.
country, terra, ae, *f*.; patria, ae, *f*.; rūs, rūris, *n*.; **in the country**, rūri.
courage, animus, ī, *m*.
cross, trānsēō, ire, trānsīī, trānsitus.
crowd, vulgus, ī, *n*.; multitudō, inis, *f*.
cry, clāmor, ōris, *m*.
cup, pōculum, ī, *n*.
custom, cōnsuetūdō, inis, *f*.
cut down, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.
- D**
- daily**, cottidiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cotidī.
danger, periculum, ī, *n*.
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, ae, *f*.
day, diēs, diēī, *m*.
daybreak, at, primā lūce.
daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f*.
dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.
dearly, cārē.
death, mors, mortis, *f*.
deed, factum, ī, *n*.
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f*.
defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfensus.
defense, praesidium, ī, *n*.
delay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= hand over) trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditus.
Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m*.
demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus.
depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.
dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m*.
depth, altitūdō, inis, *f*.
desire, cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupītus.
desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.
determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsurus.

difficult, difficilis, *e.*
diligence, diligentia, *ae, f.*
direct, administrō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
disaster, calamitās, *ātis, f.*
discover, reperīō, *īre, repperī, re-*
disgraceful, turpis, *e.* [*pertus.*]
dismiss, dimittō, *ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.*
dispatch, praemittō, *ere, praemīsī,*
praemissus.
disposition, animus, *ī, m.*
dissimilar, dissimilis, *e.*
ditch, fossa, *ae, f.*
do, faciō, *ere, fēcī, factus; agō, ere,*
ēgī, āctus.
document, litterae, *ārum, f. plur.*
door, porta, *ae, f.*
down from, dē, *w. abl.* [*w. dat.*]
draw near, appropinquō, *āre, āvi, ātum,*
draw up, instruō, *ere, instrūxī, in-*
strūctus.
drive away, pellō, *ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
during, inter, *w. acc.*

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid-
que; each (of two), uterque, utra-
que, utrumque.
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; **eager for**,
cupidus, a, um (w. gen.).
eagerly, ācritē; *cum studiō.*
earthworks, vāllum, *ī, n.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, *e.*
eight, octō.
employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
encourage, hortor, *ārī, ātus sum;*
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; incitō,
āre, āvi, ātus.
end, fīnis, *is, m.*
enemy, hostis, *is, m. and f.*
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *w. abl.*

enough, satis, *indecl.*
ensign, signum, *ī, n.*
entangle, impediō, *īre, impedīvi, im-*
pedītus.
equal, pār, *paris.*
equestrian, equester, equestris, *eques-*
tre.
equip, armō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
establish, cōfirmō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
Europe, Eurōpa, *ae, f.*
even, *express by ipse, a, um.*
ever, semper.
every, omnis, *e.*
evil, malus, *a, um.*
exceedingly, *express by superlative.*
except, nisi.
exchange, inter sē dare.
exhort, cohortor, *ārī, ātus sum.*
expect, expectō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
expel, pellō, *ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

F

face about, signa convertō, *conver-*
tere, convertī, conversus.
facing, adversus, *a, um; prep., adver-*
sus, w. acc. [*w. dat.*]
fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus,
faithful, fidus, *a, um.*
fall, cadō, *ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.*
falling, cāsus, *us, m.*
famous, *express by ille, illa, illud.*
far, far off, longē.
farmer, agricola, *ae, m.*
father, pater, *patris, m.*
favor, grātia, *ae, f.*
fear, timeō, *ēre, timui, —; vereor,*
ērī, veritus sum.
fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
few, paucī, *ae, a (plur.).*
field, ager, *agrī, m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; *asper, aspera,*

asperum ; ferus, a, um.
fiercely, ācriter.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; **fight a battle**, proelium facere.
fill up, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.
finally, dēnique.
find, invenīō, īre, invēnī, inventus ;
 reperīō, īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōficiō, ere, cōfēcī, cōfectus.
fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
first, prīmus, a, um ; **at first**, prīmō.
fit, idōneus, a, um.
five, quīque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.
flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in fugam dare.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, a, um.
food, cibus, ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. abl.* ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, propter, *w. acc.* ; prō, *w. abl.*
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; in-
 struō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus.
former, ille, illa, illud.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortifications, moenia, ium, *n. plur.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūnī, [mūnītus].
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.
free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
freedom, libertās, ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amicus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
from, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab, ē or ex, dē, *w. abl.*
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ;
 (inhabitant), Gallus, ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor, ōris, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, e.
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
girl, puella, ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ;
give up, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ;
 permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus ;
 trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, īī, itum ; proficīscor, ī, profectus sum ; **go across or over**, transeō, īre, trānsī, trānsitus ; **go back**, redeō, redīre, redī, reditūrus ;
go forward, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus ; **go out**, exeō, exīre, exī, exitūrus ; **let go**, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus ; **be going to**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437).

god, deus, *ī, m.*
 goddess, dea, *ae, f.*
 good, bonus, *a, um.*
 graceful, gracilis, *e.*
 grain, frumentum, *ī, n.*; supplies of
 grain, rēs frumentāria, rei frumen-
 tariae, *f.*
 great, magnus, *a, um*; great many,
 complūrēs, *ia, plur.*; so great,
 tantus, *a, um.*
 greatness, magnitūdō, *inis, f.*
 Greece, Graecia, *ae, f.*
 Greek, Graecus, *ī, m.*
 ground, on the, humī.
 guard, praesidium, *ī, n.*
 guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, *inis, f.*
 hand, manus, *ūs, f.*
 Hannibal, Hannibal, *is, m.*
 happen, accidō, *ere, accidī, —.*
 harass, laccessō, *ere, laccessivī, laces-*
situs.
 harbor, portus, *ūs, m.*
 hard, difficilis, *e.*
 hardly, vix.
 harm, noceō, *ēre, nocuī, nocitū-*
rus, w. dat.
 hasten, mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum*; con-
 tendō, *ere, contendī, contentum.*
 haughty, superbus, *a, um.*
 have, habeō, *ēre, habuī, habitus*; *dat.*
of possession; have to, *passive peri-*
phrastic conjugation (438–9).
 he, is; hīc; ille; he who, is quī.
 head, caput, capitis, *n.*; be at the
 head of, praesum, praeesse, praefuī,
 praefutūrus, *w. dat.*
 hear, audiō, *īre, audivī, auditus.*
 height, altitūdō, *inis, f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus,
w. dat.
 help, auxilium, *ī, n.*; ūsus, *ūs, m.*
 Helvetians, Helvētīi, ōrum, *plur.*
 her, hers, eius; suus, *a, um*; her
 (own), suus, *a, um.*
 herself, *see self.*
 high, altus, *a, um.*
 hill, collis, *is, m.*; up the hill, ad-
 versō colle.
 himself, *see self.*
 hindrance, impedimentum, *ī, n.*
 his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a, um*;
 hither, hūc.
 hold, teneō, *ēre, tenuī, tentus*; hold
 back, retineō, *ēre, retinuī, retentus*;
 hold together, contineō, *ēre, con-*
tinuī, contentus; hold up, sustineō,
ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
 home, domus, *ūs or ī, f.*; at home,
 domī.
 honor, pudor, ōris, *m.*
 hope, spērō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
 horn, cornū, *ūs, n.*
 horse, equus, *ī, m.*
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
 hour, hōra, *ae, f.*
 house, domus, *ūs or ī, f.*
 however, autem; tamen.
 hundred, centum.
 hurl, iaciō, *ere, iēcī, iactus*; coniciō,
ere, coniēcī, coniectus.
 hurry, contendō, *ere, contendī, con-*
tentum; mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum.*

I

I, ego, meī.
 Ides, Idūs, Iduum, *f. plur.*
 if, sī; if not, nisi.

impede, impediō, īre, impediṽi, impeditus.

in, *sign of abl.*; **in**, *w. abl.*; **be in**, īnsum, inesse, īnfui, īnfutūrus.

incite, incitō, āre, āṽi, ātus.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.

industry, diligentia, ae, *f.*

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, *m. plur.*

influence, grātia, ae, *f.*; auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; **have most influence**, plūrimum posse.

influence, permovere, ēre, permōṽi, permōtus.

inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incoluī, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, *m.*

injure, noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *w. dat.*; obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus, *w. dat.* [esse, *w. dat.*

intend, in animō habēre; **in animō into**, in, *w. acc.*

intrust, committō, ere, commīsī, commissus; permittō, ere, permīsī, permissus.

island, insula, ae, *f.*

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, Italia, ae, *f.*

its, eius; **suus**, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, ī, *m.*

javelin, pīlum, ī, *n.*

join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus; **join battle**, proelium committō, ere, commīsī, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, *m.*

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*

judgment, iūdicium, ī, *n.*

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, āre, āṽi, ātus; **keep (away) from**, prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.

kill, necō, āre, āṽi, ātus; interficiō, ere, interfēcī, interfectus; occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, *f.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; **intellegō**, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; *perf. of cōgnōscō*, ere, cōgnōṽi, cōgnitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.

labor, labor, ōris, *m.*; **opus**, operis, *n.*

lack, inopia, ae, *f.*

lack, careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*

lacking, be, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *w. dat.*

land, terra, ae, *f.*; **native land**, patria, ae, *f.*

large, magnus, a, um; **amplus**, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte; **till late at night**, ad multam noctem.

latter, hīc, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across or over**, trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus; **lead back**, redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus; **lead out**, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; **prīnceps**, prīncipis, *m.*

learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus; **discō**, ere, didicī, —; **learn of**, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōṽi, cōgnitus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessi, discessum; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus.
trans., **leave, leave behind**, relinquo, ere, reliquī, relictus.

left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.

left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; **nothing left**, nihil reliquī.

legion, legiō, ōnis, *f*.

lest, nē, *w. subjv.*

let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; **let go**, dimitto, ere, dimisi, dimissus.

letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, *f*.; **(epistle)**, litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*

liberate, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.

liberty, libertās, ātis, *f*.

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m*.

life, vīta, ae, *f*.

lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

light, lūx, lūcis, *f*.

like, similis, e.

like, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f*.

little, parvus, a, um.

live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.

long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.

lord, dominus, ī, *m*.

love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

low, humilis, e.

loyal, fidus, a, um.

M

mad, insānus, a, um.

make, faciō, ere, fecī, factus.

man, vir, virī, *m*.; homō, hominis, *m*. and *f*.; **a man who**, is quī.

manage, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.

many, *plural of multus*, a, um; **very many**, complūrēs, complūria.

march, iter, itineris, *n*.; **on the march**, ex itinere.

march, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, fecī, factus; contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.

Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m*.

master, magister, magistrī, *m*.; dominus, ī, *m*.

may, *sign of wish*; utinam, *w. subjv.*

means of, by, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*

mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m*.

Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m*.

messenger, nūntius, ī, *m*.

middle of, medius, a, um.

mile, mille passūs; *plur.*, millia passuum.

mind, animus, ī, *m*.; mēns, mentis, *f*.;

have in mind, in animō habēre; in animō esse, *w. dat.*;

turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī,

animadversus.

mine, meus, a, um.

misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m*.

money, pecūnia, ae, *f*.

month, mēnsis, is, *m*.

moon, lūna, ae, *f*.

more, plūs, plūris; *sign of comparative.*

moreover, autem (*postpositive*).

most, *sign of superlative.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m*.

move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum,

multō.

multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f*.

must, *passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent* (438–9).

my, meus, a, um.

myself, *see self.*

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n*.

name, appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.

nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*

native land, patria, ae, *f.*

near, ad, apud, *w. acc.*; **come near**, go

near, accēdō, ere, accessī, acces-
nearest, proximus, a, um. [sūrus.

need, be in need of, careō, ēre, caruī,
caritūrus, *w. abl.*

neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*

neighboring, finitimus, a, um.

neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, a, um.

next, proximus, a, um; posterus,
a, um.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **late at night**,
multā nocte.

nineteen, undēvīgintī.

no, nōn; **no one**, none, nūllus, a, um;
nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.

nor, neque.

north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*

not, nōn; **and not**, but not, neque;
not to, nē, *w. subjv.*; **if not**, nisi;
that not, nē, *w. subjv.*

nothing, nihil, *indecl.*

notice, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī,
animadversus.

now, nunc, iam.

number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitudō,
inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*

obey, pāreō, ēre, pāruī, —, *w. dat.*

obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus.

occupy, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.

of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *w. abl.*

often, saepe.

old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

older, maior nātū.

on, in, *w. abl.*

one, ūnus, a, um; **one who**, is quī;

one . . . another, alius . . . alius; **the**

one . . . the other, alter . . . alter; **to**

one another, inter sē.

only, sōlus, a, um.

opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*

oppose, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*

order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*

order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō,
āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre, āvī,
ātus.

Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, īgis, *m.*

other, alius, alia, aliud; (**of two**),
alter, a, um.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus;
oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*;
passive periphrastic conjugation
(438-9).

our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;

our men, nostrī, ōrum, *m. plur.*

ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsī, ae, a.

out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

over, in, *w. abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; **be**
over, supersum, superesse, superfuī,
superfutūrus, *w. dat.*

overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.

overtake, cōsequor, cōsequī, cōn-
secūtus sum.

owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*

people, populus, ī, *m.*

perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxī, in-
tellēctus.

perish, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

permit, *permittō, ere, permissi, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum.*

persuade, *persuādēō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, w. dat.*

pitch (camp), *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.*

place, *locus, ī, m.; plur., loci or loca; in that place, ibi; to this place, hūc.*

place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus; conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus.*

plan, *cōsiliū, ī, n.*

plead (a cause), *dīcō, ere, dixi, dictus.*

please, *dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

pleasing, *grātus, a, um.*

pledge, *obses, obsidis, m. or f.*

plow, *arō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

point out, *dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

Pompey, *Pompēius, ī, m.*

poor, *miser, misera, miserum.*

possess, *obtinēō, ēre, obtinuī, obtentus.*

possession, take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvi, ātus; get possession of, potior, potiri, potitus sum, w. abl.*

possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, *quam, w. superl. of adj.; as soon as possible, quam primum.*

power, *potestās, ātis, f.; imperium, ī, n.; vīs, acc., vim.*

powerful, *potēns, potentis; be very powerful, plurimum posse.*

praise, *laudō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

prefer, *mālō, mälle, māluī, —.*

prepare, *parō, āre, āvi, ātus; comparō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

present, be, *adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus.*

preserve, *servō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

pretty, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*

proceed, *cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecūtus sum.*

promise, *polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum.*
proper, be, *oportet, ēre, oportuit, impers.*

protect, *dēfendō, ere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus.*
protection, *praesidium, ī, n.; fidēs, eī, f.; put one's self under the protection of, in fidem venīre, w. dat.*

proud, *superbus, a, um.*

provide, *parō, āre, āvi, ātus; comparō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

province, *prōvincia, ae, f.*

provisions, *commēātus, ūs, m.; rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.*

prudence, *cōsiliū, ī, n.*

public, *pūblicus, a, um.*

punish, *pūniō, ire, pūnīvi, pūnītus.*

punishment, *poena, ae, f.*

pupil, *discipulus, ī, m.*

purpose of, for the, *ad, w. acc. of gerundive.*

pursue, *cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecūtus sum.*

put to flight, *in fugam dō.*

Q

queen, *rēgīna, ae, f.*

quickly, *celeriter.*

quickness, *celeritās, ātis, f.*

R

race (= nation), *gēns, gentis, f.*

raise, *tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus,*

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus. [tum.
reach, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perven-
rear, novissimum agmen, *n.*
reason, causa, ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, accep-
tus; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī,
cōgnitus.
redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
relief, subsidium, ī, *n.*
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, māsum;
remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, re-
spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō,
āre, āvī, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvī,
ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*
request, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī,
petitus.
require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
rest of, reliquus, a, um.
restrain, contineō, ēre, continuī, con-
tentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obten-
tus; retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus
(*refl.*); pedem referō, referre, ret-
tulī, relātus.
return, *intr.*, redeō, redīre, rediī,
reditūrus; revertor, revertī, re-
vertī, reversus; *trans.* (= give

back), reddō, reddere, reddidī,
reditus.
reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reward, praemium, ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, ae, *f.*; īfer, itineris, *n.*
rock, saxum, ī, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; *as subst.*,
Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, ae, *f.*
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; im-
perō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
run away, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um.
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.*; ut,
w. subjv.
sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f.*
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save (= **preserve**), servō, āre, āvī,
ātus; (= **rescue**), ēripiō, ere, ēri-
puī, ēreptus. [*def.*]
say, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus; inquam,
scare, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
scout, explorātor, ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, is, *n.*
seat, sedile, is, *n.*
second, secundus, a, um; **for the**
second time, iterum.
see, videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus.
seek, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petitus;
quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus.

seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.

select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.

self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*); suī (*refl.*); **myself, yourself, ourselves**, ipse (*intens.*); *pers. pron.* (*refl.*).

senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus; **send ahead**, praemittō, ere, praemīsī, praemissus; **send off**, dīmittō, ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus.

Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. plur.*

set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.

set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. acc. and dat.*

seven, septem.

seventy, septuāgintā.

severely, graviter.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, ea; illa.

ship, nāvis, is, *f.*

short, brevis, e.

shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.

side, latus, lateris, *n.*; **from or on all sides**, undique.

sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

sign, signum, ī, *n.*

similar, similis, e.

six, sex.

size, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*

skillful, perītus, a, um.

slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*

slave, servus, ī, *m.*

slay, occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus.

slender, gracilis, e.

slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.

small, parvus, a, um.

smooth, lēnis, e.

snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus.

so, ita; tam, (*w. adjs. and advs.*);

so great, tantus, a, um; **and so**, itaque; **so as not**, nē, *w. subjv.*

soldier, miles, mīlitis, *m.*

sole, sōlus, a, um.

some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid (quod); aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod); **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī; **some in one direction**, **some in another**, aliī aliam in partem.

son, filius, fili or filiī, *m.*

son-in-law, gener, generī, *m.*

soon, iam; **mox**; **as soon as**, quam primum.

space, spatium, ī, *n.*

speak, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus; **speak together**, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.

spear, hasta, ae, *f.*

speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

spirit, animus, ī, *m.*

spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*

stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.

star, stella, ae, *f.*

state, cīvītās, ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *f.*

station, conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus; **constitute**, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsus.

storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; **take by storm**, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

story, fābula, ae, *f.*
strange, aliēnus, a, um.
street, via, ae, *f.*
strength, vis, vim, *f.*
strengthen, alō, ere, alui, alitus *or* altus.
strive, contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
strong, validus, a, um.
struggle, contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
sturdy, validus, a, um.
such, tālis, e ; tantus, a, um.
suffer, patior, pati, passus sum ; labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, *f.*
summon, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
supplies, commeātus, ūs, *m.* ; **supplies of grain**, rēs frūmentāria, *f.*
supply, cōpia, ae, *f.*
suppose, existimō, āre, āvī, ātus ; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
surpass, *tr.*, superō, āre, āvī, ātus ; *intr.*, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.
surrender, dēditio, ōnis, *f.*
surrender, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus ; dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, ire, circumvenī, circumventus.
survive, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.
sustain, sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus.
swift, vėlōx, vėlōcis.
swiftly, celeriter.
sword, gladius, i, *m.*

T

table, mēnsa, ae, *f.*
take, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; **take**

away, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus ;
take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **take possession of**, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
teacher, magister, magistrī, *m.*
tell, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.
temple, templum, ī, *n.* ; aedēs, aedis, *f.*
ten, decem.
tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
territory, finēs, finium, *m. plur.*
than, quam ; *abl. after comparative.*
that, demonstr., is, ea, id ; ille, illa, illud ; *rel.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, so that, ut, *w. subjv.* ; *after verbs of fearing*, nē, *w. subjv.* ; **that not**, nē, *w. subjv.* ; **would that**, utinam.
their (own), theirs, suus, a, um ; eōrum, eārum.
themselves, *see self.*
then, tum.
thence, inde. [*lated.*]
there, ibi ; *introductory, not trans-*
therefore, itaque.
thereupon, inde.
they, ii, eae, ea ; illi, illae, illa.
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, existimō, āre, āvī, ātus ; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hoc.
thou, tū.
thousand, mille (*indecl.*) ; *plur.*, millia *or* milia.
three, trēs, tria ; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.
through, per, *w. acc.*
throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus ; coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, *ī, n.*; **for a long time**, diū.

to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; *sign of subjv. of purpose.*

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward(s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, *ī, n.*

trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trādūcō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, *ī, n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpia, ē, ārum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, eī, *f.* [*w. dat.*]

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum,

try, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; **turn back**, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vīgintī.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, āri, ātus sum; **urge on**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; **be of use to**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, prīmum agmen, prīmī agminis, *n.*

vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, *adj. or adv. in superl.*; *intens.*, ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vīcus, *ī, m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; **wage**

war upon, bellum īferō, īferre, intulī, īnlātus, *w. dat.*

wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wall, mūrus, *ī, m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*

war, bellum, *ī, n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, *ī, n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.

well, bene; **well known**, nōbilis, e.

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid;

which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

who (*rel.*), qui, quae; (*interrog.*), quis, quae.

whole, tōtus, a, um; omnis, e.

why, cūr.

wicked, malus, a, um.

wide, lātus, a, um.

width, lātitudō, inis, *f.*

wild, ferus, a, um.

will, volō, velle, voluī, —; **will not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

willing, be, volō, velle, voluī, —; **be more willing**, mālō, mälle, mālui, —.

wine, vīnum, ī, *n.*

wing, cornū, ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*

wisely, prūdentē.

wish, cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus; volō, velle, voluī, —.

with, *sign of abl.*; cum, *w. abl.*; apud, *w. acc.* [cessum.

withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, dis-

within, *sign of abl. of time.*

without, sine, *w. abl.*; **be without**,

careō, ēre, caruī, caritūrus, *w. abl.*

withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus.

woman, fēmina, ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*

wood (= forest), silva, ae, *f.*

work, labor, ōris, *f.*; opus, operis, *n.*

work, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus.

would that, utinam, *w. subjv.*

wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wretched, miser, misera, miserum.

write, scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m.*

yet, tamen.

you, tū, vōs.

young, iuvenis, is.

your, yours, tuus, a, um; vester, vestra, vestrum.

yourself, tū, vōs; ipse.

Z

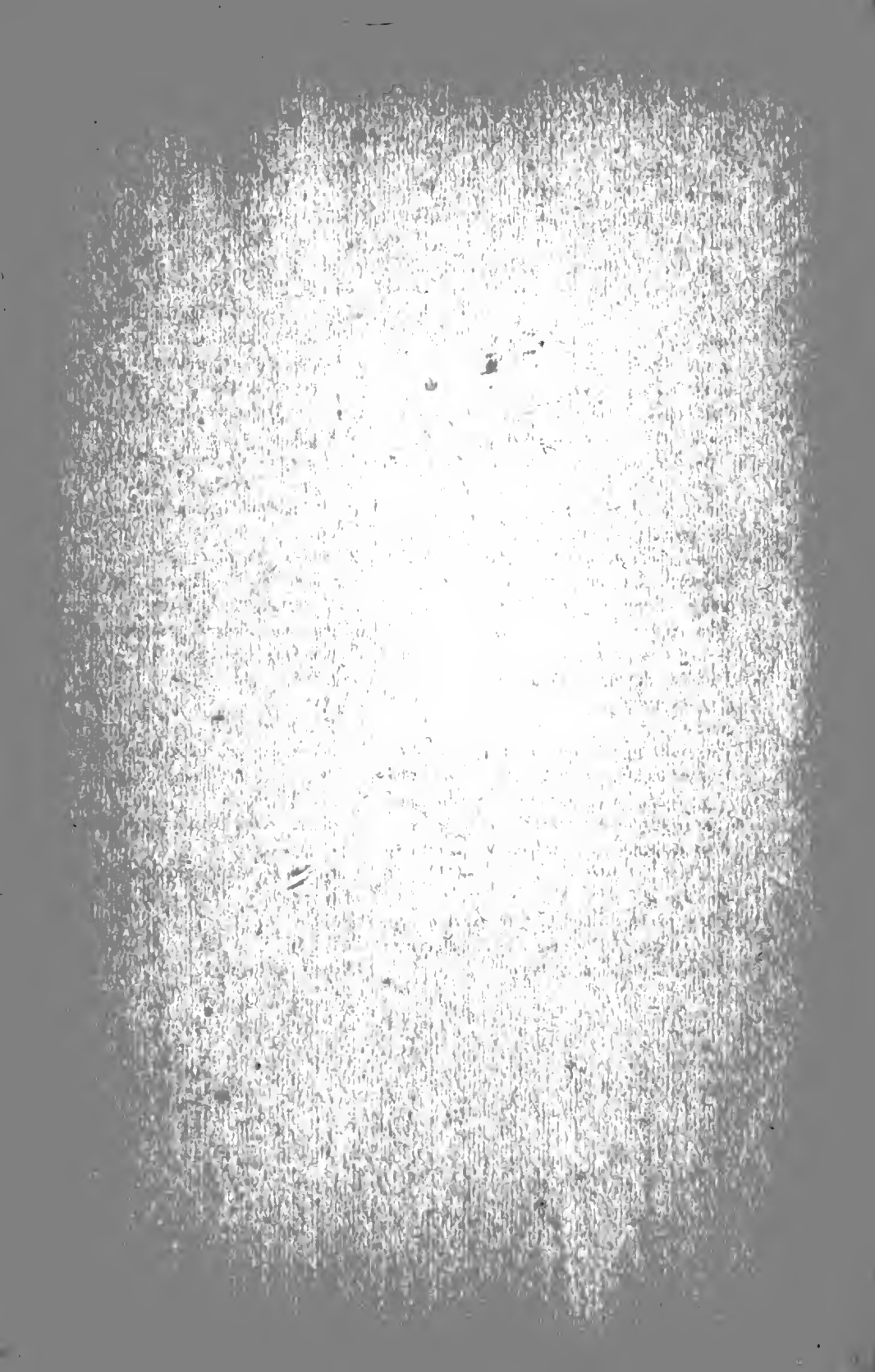
zeal, studium, ī, *n.*

INDEX

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- Ablative, with *ab*, expressing agency, 142;
 of cause, 118; of comparison, 260; of
 manner, 148; of means or instrument,
 94; of measure of difference, 267; of
 separation, 211; of specification, 157;
 of time, 131; descriptive, 302-303;
 ablative absolute, 315-317; with *utor*,
fruor, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, 337.
- Accent, 20, 74, 1 and 2.
- Accusative, of time and space, 245; of
 limit of motion, 236, 237; as subject of
 infinitive, 184; 329.
- Adjectives, agreement, 65; demonstrative,
 201; interrogative, 216, 217; possessive
 292; as nouns, 203; with dative, 163.
- Adverbs, formation, 279; comparison,
 280.
- Agency with the passive, expressed by
 ablative with *ab*, 142.
- aliquis*, 301.
- Apposition, 58.
- bonus*, comparison, 272.
- Cause, ablative of, 118.
- Commands, 399.
- Comparison, Lessons 43, 44; ablative of,
 260; irregular, 272; of adverbs, 280.
- Complementary infinitive, 184.
- Compound verbs, construction, 393-394.
- Concessive clauses, 386-387.
- Conditional sentences, 413-421.
- cum* clauses, 386-387.
- Dative of possession, 231; of service,
 294-295; with adjectives, 163; with
 verbs, 342-343; with compound verbs,
 393-394.
- Demonstratives, 201-203.
- Deponent verbs, 333-335, 528; perfect
 passive participle of, active in mean-
 ing, 335.
- Descriptive ablative and genitive, 302-
 303.
- domi*, 235.
- domus*, 222, 2; 501.
- eō*, 234; 525.
- Exceedingly, expressed by superlative,
 268.
- Fearing, verbs of, 384, 385.
- ferō*, 527.
- fiō*, 526.
- fruor*, 337.
- fungor*, 337.
- Gender, rules of, 27, 28; 128; 223.
- Genitive, descriptive, 302-303; of the
 whole (partitive), 251.
- Gerund and Gerundive, 403-406.
- hic*, 201.
- humī*, 235.
- idem*, 189.
- ille*, 202.
- Imperative, 398, 399.
- Impersonal use of verbs, 432.
- Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.
- Indirect discourse, 327-330; 369-370;
 427-430.
- Indirect object, 58.
- Indirect question, 369-370.
- Infinitive, formation, 322; as subject,
 183 *b*; complementary, 184; tense of,
 in indirect discourse, 330.
- Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216.

- ipse*, 207.
is, 188, 191.
iste, 208.
 Locative, 235.
mālō, 524.
 Measure of difference, ablative of, 267.
mille, 243, 3.
-ne, 40.
nōlō, 524.
 Numerals, 241-243.
 Order of words, 82.
 Participles, formation, 307; tenses, 309;
 use, 311; of deponents, 334; perfect
 passive participle, active in meaning,
 335; as protasis, 311, 315, 316, 421.
 Partitive genitive, 251.
 Periphrastic conjugations, active, 437,
 529; passive, 438, 439, 530.
 Personal pronouns, 284, 285.
 Place where, whither, whence, 237.
plūs, 273.
 Possession, dative of, 231.
 Possessive adjectives, 292-293.
possum, 274, 522.
potior, 337.
 Predicate agreement, 34, 184, 3.
 Pronouns, demonstrative, 201; indefinite,
 300-301; interrogative, 216; personal,
 284; reflexive, 286; relative, 195;
 agreement, 197; in indirect discourse,
 428.
prōsum, 498.
 Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 350-
 351; 363-364; by gerund or gerundive,
 406; by supine, 433-435.
 Quantity, 16-19.
 Questions, 40; indirect, 369-370.
quī, 195.
quīdam, 301.
quis, 216; 301.
quisquam, 301.
quisque, 301.
 Rather, expressed by comparative, 268.
 Reflexive pronouns, 284, 286.
 Relative, 195; agreement, 197; relative
 clause of purpose, 363-364.
 Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.
rūrī, 235.
 Separation, ablative of, 211.
 Sequence of tenses, 371-374.
 Space, extent of, expressed by accusative,
 245.
 Subject of infinitive, 184.
 Subjunctive, of purpose, 350-351; 363-
 364; of result, 356-358.
 Substantive clauses, 378, 380; with verbs
 of fearing, 384-385.
sum, 521.
 Supine, 433-435.
 Syllables, 10-15.
 Time, extent of, expressed by accusa-
 tive, 245; clauses expressing time,
 386-387.
 Too, expressed by comparative, 268.
ūtor, 337.
 Very, expressed by superlative, 268.
vēscor, 337.
 Vocative, 24.
volō, 524.
 Wishes, 423-425.



Jesus - I am the

Salvator

L.H.S.

Jesus - I am the

$X = \alpha$
 $P = r$ } characteristics

Chii

Hebrew
Raised, he the Holy Spirit
sent as many a times a
day.

Charlie Rogers.

4995 Hamlet M.

H. Seaman by.

8439 W. 13th St. (L.L.)

1478 Union Street 13th St. W.

School

2014 Hamlet M.

Mary S.

Grace Cook

Went on the hook

When we were having
A test from this book.

G.C.C.

